

To CLEO MURLAND, *Associate Professor,*  
*University of Michigan,* in appreciation for  
generous assistance which went into the mak-  
ing of this book.

---

# PREFACE

---

This book is a work manual as well as a source of technical information for instructors and pupils interested in the art and technique of jewelry making. Since work procedures, techniques, and their sequence are the same for the instructor as for the learner, whether taught in the class room or self taught, no sections are directed specifically to one or the other.

Sections one through three deal with the basic processes of jewelry making with the techniques for each process specified in the order in which they are to be carried through. Jewelry construction in section four is presented in the same way.

Throughout the book, emphasis is given to the application of the principles of design which must be used as consistently with metal as they are used with other working mediums. The beginner finds it necessary to pay strict attention to proportion, mass, balance, unity of line and form because the medium and the processes with which he is engaged are influenced by the weight, solidity, and texture of the material. If these things are observed systematically the effect of processes will become apparent as the work progresses, and by the same token, as he gains experience he will learn to select processes which give weight, lightness, or strength to the article under construction and thus to the design. Design and technique must balance if the jewelry produced is to have art value.

The author wishes to acknowledge with appreciation the encouragement given by Louise L. Green, Head of the Art Department of Cass Technical High School, during the preparation of this book. Thanks are due also to members of the Jewelry classes who have lent jewelry for illustrations; to Laurine Muethel,

## Finishing Processes

Cleaning

Polishing

Coloring

## III. DECORATIVE PROCESSES .....

## Chasing, Repoussé, and Modeling

Chasing

Repoussé

Modeling

## Carving

## Wire Working

Wire Drawing

Tube Drawing

Wire Twisting

Round Twist

Vine or Chevron Twist

Incised Twist

Flat and Open Twist

Waved Wire, Smooth and Flat

Waved Wire, Broken and Flat

## Wire Coiling

Coil of Round Rings

Coil of Oval Rings

Coiled Wire Cone

Coiled Band of Overlapping Rings

Coiled Wire Knob

Round Rings of Wire

Oval Rings of Wire

Flat Coil of Wire

Coiled Wire Unit

## Domes, Balls, and Stamped Forms

Domes

Balls

Stamped Forms	
Enameling	
Champlevé Enamel	
Cloisonné Enamel	
Bassetaille Enamel	
Limoges or Painted Enamel	
Plique à Jour Enamel	
Foil	
Stone Setting	
Round Bezel and Bearing	
Square Mitered Bezel and Bearing	
Claw or Crown Bezel and Bearing	
Paved or Gypsy Setting	

#### IV. JEWELRY MAKING ..... 171

Finger Rings	
Ring with Double Knot	
Ring with Square Knot, Wire, and Balls	
Ring with Decorated Flat Ornament	
Ring with Decorated Domed Ornament, Wire, and Balls	
Ring with Round Stone, Wire, and Sawed Units	
Ring with Round Stones, Rings, and Domes	
Ring with Round Stone, Built-up Dome	
Ring with Oblong Stone, Metal Plate, and Wire Units	
Ring with Three Stones and Carved Design	
Ring with Round Stone and Carved Design	
Brooches and Clips	
Brooch Pierced and Decorated with Wire and Balls	
Brooch Built Up with Metal Units	
Clip with Stone, Wire, and Balls	



Bracelets	
Bracelet of Twisted Wire	
Bracelet Band with Applied Wire Units	
Chains	
Chain of Round and Oval Links	
Chain of Interwoven Links	
Chain of Flat Coiled Units	
Round Coiled Units and Oval Links	
Clasps	
Clasp—Ring Socket and Swivel Catch	
Clasp—Tube Socket and Spring Catch	
Clasp—Square and Oblong Sockets and Spring Catch	
Beads	
Open-work Bead of Wire Units, and Balls	
Round Bead Decorated with Wire and Domes	
Oval Bead Decorated with Wire and Balls	
V. STONES .....	32
Hardness of Stones	
Translucent Stones	
Opaque Stones	
Transparent Stones	
APPENDICES .....	33
Solders and Fluxes—Types and Uses	
Cleaning Materials and Solutions—Types and Uses	
Preparation and Care of Tools and Materials	
Wire Gauge Standards	
Workshop—Floor Plan and Equipment	
GLOSSARY .....	35
BIBLIOGRAPHY .....	36
INDEX .....	37

## I. THE SAMPLER

The Design

Central Figures

Wire Work

Solid Ornaments

Joining Figures, Wires, and Solid Ornaments

Finishing

Mounting Plate

Mounting the Design

---

# THE SAMPLER

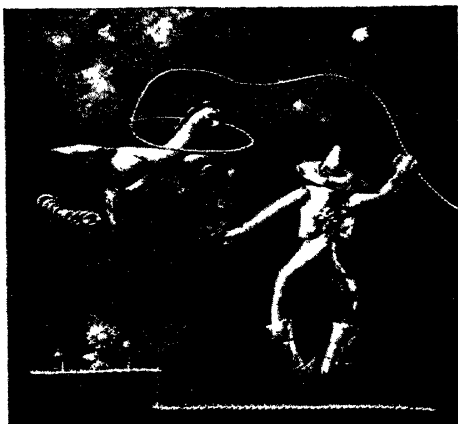
---

A working knowledge of the techniques and processes used in jewelry making should be learned as soon as possible. In order to accomplish this, the first piece of work should be a simple article which involves a number of processes and the use of various tools.

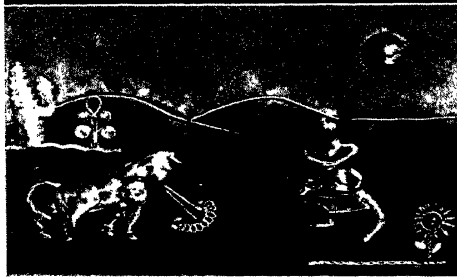
For beginners in the day school where pupils work in the jewelry room daily and with the same purpose that dominates other class work, the sampler is a most effective way of establishing fundamentals of work techniques at the very beginning of work with metals and metal tools. A well made sampler is a profitable and interesting piece of work and, when the design is good, the finished article is attractive and useful. However, the most important feature is that it is a constant reminder of methods and techniques which are to be applied over and over again in other articles the jewelry worker creates. Since the foundation of techniques and workmanship is begun in this article, the student should incorporate in his design as many materials as possible and include in his plan processes which require the tools most commonly used. The samplers on page 4 show a wide range of processes.

These designs are pictorial. A figure or an animal depicting action is usually more effective for a sampler than an abstract design, because the units brought together to show the whole demonstrate the unity of the design more effectively for the beginner than the assembly of the units of an abstract design the relationship of which may not be so evident.

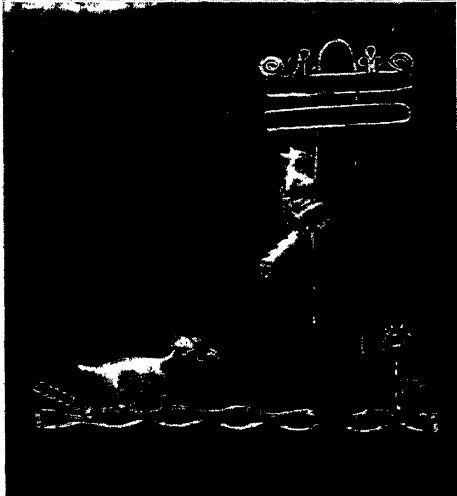
Since the purpose of the sampler is to introduce beginners to processes, tools, and materials mainly, but with good design a close second, it is important to keep the design simple enough to demonstrate the relation between techniques and design. Simple exaggerations of speed shown by the cloud of dust of coiled wire, and the fear of the cat by its position on the pole and the upright hair on its tail contribute to the sense of design which the beginner needs to develop early in work with metals.



*Sampler No. 1*



*Sampler No. 2*



*Sampler No. 3*

These samplers illustrate ways of developing a simple idea into a working design. The beginner is expected to work out a similar plan for a sampler to be executed in metals with metal tools. This is done after the instructor has demonstrated the various processes and explained the essential points to be kept in mind when creating a well designed sampler.

As the work progresses it is also important to acquire the ability to follow the instructor's demonstration and to understand oral explanations and written directions since these three methods are used throughout the beginning stages of this form of craft work.

When the demonstration has been completed, the student is ready to make his design. Two items must be kept in mind: (a) the design must be created around the processes to be used, and (b) the jewelry methods used for the sampler must be consistent with good design and jewelry technique. One of the samplers selected for analysis includes practically all the elements to be used in creating the first metal piece.

Processes, tools, and materials are listed below in the order in which they are to be used.

#### PROCESSES

Gauging the metal  
Transferring the design  
Sawing  
Filing  
Annealing  
Pickling  
Chasing  
Repoussé  
Soldering  
Cleaning  
Polishing  
Carving

Drawing wire  
Twisting wire  
Coiling wire  
Cutting disks  
Doming  
Stamping  
Bezel making  
Ball making  
Coloring  
Finishing  
Stone setting  
Drilling  
Mounting

## TOOLS

Metal gauge (Brown and

Sharpe)

Soft pencil

Gas plate

Burnisher

Scratch awl

Bench pin

Jeweler's saw frame

Jeweler's saw blade #1/0

Needle files

Jeweler's hand vise

File card or brush

Blow torch

Earthenware pitcher

Copper pickle pan

Copper tongs

Pitch bowl and holder

Chasing tools

Repoussé tools

Chasing hammer

Pliers

Borax slate or saucer

Jeweler's shears

Camel's hair brush

Steel tweezers

Polishing motor

Felt, bristle buffing wheels

Granite pan

Scrub brush

Shellac mounting stick

Steel surface plate

Gravers

Oil stone

Bench (secured to the floor  
or wall)

Bench vise

Round hole draw plate

Draw tongs

Hand drill

Steel or iron hook about  $\frac{1}{2}$   
inch

Rolling mill

Small round mandrel

C clamp

Two boards (Fig. 23)

Mallet

Small wire nails

Wire cutters

Dapping cutters

Lead dapping block

Dapping punches

Dapping die

Stamping tools

Wax stick stone lifter

Dentimetre

Dividers

Burnisher

Tin snips

Fine muslin, cotton, or cham-  
ois buffing wheels

Center punch

Twist drill

Steel wire buffing wheel

## MATERIALS

Sterling silver sheet 24-gauge

Silver solder sheet medium 28-gauge	Boric acid and alcohol solu- tion
Sterling silver wire 14-gauge	Powdered rouge
Sterling silver sheet 28-gauge	Gum tragacanth
Fine silver wire 18-gauge	Binding wire 26- and 18- gauge
Copper sheet 18- or 20-gauge	Scotch stone
Sketch pad	Tripoli cake
Tracing paper	Rouge stick
Fine pumice powder	Soda, ammonia, and water so- lution
White bees wax	Yellow flake shellac
Soft cloth	Alcohol
Chalk	Yellow bees wax
Fine emery cloth ...	Potassium sulphide solution
Charcoal block	Whiting
Pickle (sulphuric acid solu- tion)	Floor wax
Prepared pitch	Wool cloth
Light oil	Tin wire 30-gauge
Kerosene cloth	
Prepared borax or prepared flux for hard solder	

## SAMPLER DESIGN

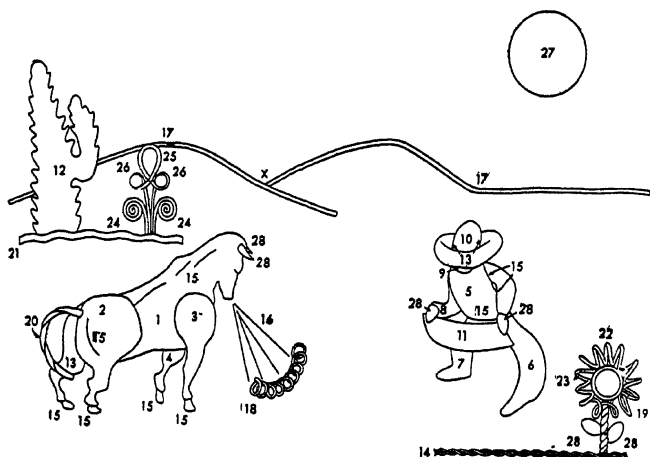


Fig. 1.—Working drawing of the sampler

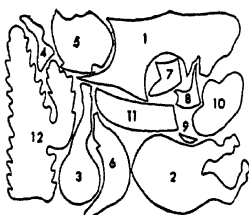


Fig. 2.—Pattern for cutting.

PROCESSES	NUMBERED
Saw out parts.....	1 through 12
Chase lines .....	13
Repoussé .....	1 through 12
Solder pieces .....	1 through 12
	14, 17 at X
	19 through 26, 28
Carve lines .....	15 and 16
Draw wire .....	14, 17 through 21
	and 23 through 25
Twisted wire ...	19
Incised wire ...	20
Flat open twist ..	14



PROCESSES	NUMBERED
Waved wire smooth and flat .....	21
Band of overlapping rings .....	18
Coiled wire knot.....	23
Flat coil .....	24
Coiled unit .....	25
Dome .....	27
Balls .....	26
Stamped forms .....	28
Round bezel and bearing .....	22

## DIRECTIONS FOR EXECUTING THE SAMPLER

As the student selects processes he should be able to determine their suitability to the design he wishes to develop. A sampler design is created as follows:

1. Draw the design on paper as shown in Fig. 1.
2. Analyze the design and divide it into parts.
3. Determine the processes to be used.
4. Indicate and list the processes with numbers on the drawing.
5. Make the layout as shown in Fig. 2.
6. Execute the design in metal.

When the design and the processes to be used are determined, the student is ready to proceed with the construction of the piece he has planned, according to the following work plan.

## PROCESSES

## CENTRAL FIGURES

*Gauging*  
p. 346  
*Transferring  
the Design*  
p. 33  
*Sawing*  
p. 31  
*Filing*  
p. 25  
*Annealing*  
p. 18  
*Pickling*  
p. 22  
*Chasing  
and  
Repoussé*  
p. 77  
*Soldering*  
p. 38  
*Pickling*  
*Cleaning*  
p. 70  
*Polishing*  
p. 71  
*Carving*  
p. 87

Gauge the sheet, sterling silver 24-gauge.

Transfer the layout on the silver. Use the wax method.

Saw out the parts numbered 1 through 12.

File all sawed edges smooth.

Anneal the silver to make it pliable.

Pickle the silver after annealing.

Chase the lines numbered 13.  
Repoussé the pieces numbered 1 through 12.

Solder together the parts numbered 1 through 4.  
Solder together the parts numbered 5 through 11.

Clean in pickle after soldering.

Remove excess solder and scratches from the surface of the silver.

Polish the silver.

Carve the lines numbered 15.

## WIRE WORK

*Gauging*  
*Annealing*

Gauge the wire, sterling silver 14-gauge.  
Anneal the wire.

## PROCESSES

- |                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <i>Wire Drawing</i><br>p. 96 | Draw the wire to the sizes required 14, 17 through 21 and 23 through 26. (Fig. 22)  |
| <i>Cutting</i>               | Cut the wire in required lengths.   |
| <i>Twisting</i><br>p. 101    | Twist wire for 19. (Fig. 27)<br>Make an incised wire for 20. (Fig. 29)<br>Make a flat open twist wire for 14. (Fig. 30)<br>Make a flat smooth waved wire for 21. (Fig. 31)                                |
| <i>Coiling</i><br>p. 106     | Make a band of overlapping rings for 18. (Fig. 38)<br>Coil the wire into a knob of rings for 23. (Fig. 39)<br>Coil the wire to form a flat coil for 24. (Fig. 42)<br>Coil the wire unit for 25. (Fig. 46) |

## SOLID ORNAMENTS

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <i>Gauging</i><br><i>Cutting</i><br><i>and</i><br><i>Doming</i><br>p. 120 | Gauge the sheet, sterling silver 28-gauge.<br>Cut a disk for 27.<br>Dome the disk. |
| <i>Stamping</i><br>p. 123   | Stamp four forms for 28.   |
| <i>Bezel</i><br><i>Making</i><br>p. 153                                   | Make the bezel and bearing for the stone 22. (Fig. 56)                             |
| <i>Gauging</i><br><i>Ball Making</i><br>p. 122                            | Gauge the wire, fine silver 18-gauge.<br>Make two balls of equal size for 26.      |

## PROCESSES

JOINING THE CENTRAL FIGURES,  
WIRES, AND SOLID ORNAMENTS*Soldering*

Solder 28 to the man.  
 Solder 20 and 28 to the animal.  
 Solder 26 to 25.  
 Solder 24 to 25.  
 Solder 12, 24, 25 to 21.  
 Solder 17 at X.  
 Solder 22 to 23.  
 Solder 19 to 23.  
 Solder 28 to 19.  
 Solder 19 to 14.

## FINISHING

*Pickling*

Clean in pickle.

*Cleaning*

Remove any excess solder with file, scraper, or scotch stone.

*Polishing*

Buff all surfaces. Use tripoli cake with felt or bristle buffing wheel to remove marks of the file or scotch stone.

Wash in a warm solution of soda, ammonia, and water to remove oil.

Polish with rouge stick and muslin buffing wheel.

Wash in solution of soda, ammonia, and water. Color the silver with potassium sulphide solution.

*Coloring*

p. 72

Remove excess color with whiting.

Polish with chamois cloth, or muslin or cotton buffing wheel.

*Stone setting*

p. 165

Set the stone.

## PROCESSES

## MOUNTING PLATE

<i>Gauging</i>	Gauge the sheet, copper 18- or 20-gauge. Cut the copper the desired size.
<i>Polishing</i>	Polish the copper with a steel wire buffing wheel.
<i>Coloring</i> p. 72	Color the copper with potassium sulphide solution. Remove excess color with whiting if desired.
<i>Polishing</i>	Polish with a steel wire buffing wheel.
<i>Finishing</i>	Wax the surface with floor wax and polish with a chamois or wool cloth.

## MOUNTING THE DESIGN

<i>Drilling</i> p. 35	Lay all parts on the copper plate and balance. Locate points to connect the design to the plate. Mark and center punch these points. Drill holes at punch marks with a #70 drill.
<i>Carving</i> <i>Mounting</i>	Carve lines 16 in the mounting plate. Loop the 30-gauge tinned wire over parts of the sampler. Insert the ends of the wire through the holes in the copper background. Twist these wires together to hold the design firmly and cut off loose ends.

Work may be begun on any one of the first three sections of this sampler. The order of processes may vary but each section should be carried through before taking up another in order to make each experience contribute to a sense of accomplishment. If all parts are constructed, finished, and mounted in an orderly, well-planned fashion, this experience will give a beginner the sense of workmanship so essential in handwork of this

nature. Consistent planning, systematic procedure, and careful attention to techniques enable the beginner to focus attention upon manipulative processes the mastery of which is craftsmanship.

These principles of workmanship apply also to camp beginners and evening school pupils although, because of limited time and available equipment, their first work may be a simple article, as a ring of wire and balls, or a twisted wire bracelet rather than a sampler. In any case the beginning project must be kept within the range of basic processes, simple substantial construction, and satisfactory design.

---

## II. JEWELRY MAKING PROCESSES

### Working Processes

Annealing

Pickling

Filing

### Construction Processes

Sawing

Piercing

Soldering

Soldering with Hard Solder

Soldering with Soft Solder

Special Soldering

Binding Wire—Its Use in Soldering

Casting

Metal Casting in Cuttle-bone

Metal Casting in Dental Investment

### Finishing Processes

Cleaning

Polishing

Coloring

---

# JEWELRY MAKING PROCESSES

---

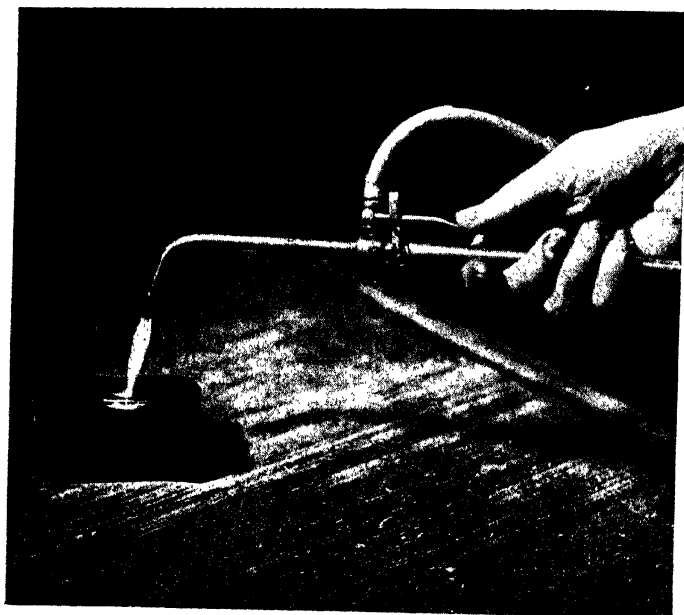
Processes used in jewelry making are grouped according to the purposes they serve. Annealing, pickling, and filing are termed working processes because they are used to keep the metal in working condition, that is, clean and malleable, as the work on it progresses. Annealing, pickling, and filing do not contribute directly to construction but keep the metal in condition for sawing, soldering, and casting which are construction processes, and for chasing, carving, and repoussé which are decorative processes. Cleaning, polishing, and coloring are finishing processes which bring out the techniques of construction and, if well done, enhance the beauty of the article. If construction and work techniques are poor, finishing processes reveal crudeness of workmanship.

Construction processes in jewelry work must be treated frankly and decoration and ornamentation used for this type of craft work should be consistent with them. A stone set on a curved surface without apparent support is out of keeping with jewelry technique and good design. An article rugged in construction adorned by a dainty stone or delicate wire ornaments loses all the values of good construction that might have been maintained by ornamentation of comparable weight and texture.

It is well to remember that form itself often constitutes the design. When the form is the design, good workmanship becomes the ornamentation. Conversely, poor workmanship may detract measurably from any design values the form may have.

A piece of jewelry may be satisfactory structurally but lack beauty of form. Its decorations may be interesting or beautiful in themselves but deficient in the sense of harmony which is necessary to make them an integral part of a satisfying design. The processes used for jewelry making are the hall marks of good design in this form of craft work.





*Fig. 3.—Annealing the metal with the blow torch flame.*

---

## ANNEALING

---

Annealing is heating metal to soften it and to render it more pliable. The number of times the article has to be annealed depends upon the amount of rolling, hammering, twisting, bending, and drawing to be done. These processes invariably harden metal in the course of construction and, in order to keep it sufficiently pliable to be worked, annealing may have to be done frequently. The amount and intensity of the heat to be used depends upon the area and the thickness of the piece to be annealed and to the heat retaining qualities of the surface upon which the metal rests when heat is applied as shown in Fig. 3. The distribution of the heat is important in annealing and the worker must learn how to

keep the flame spread evenly until the whole piece turns a glowing red. It is the heat which renders the metal pliable.

<i>Tools</i>	Charcoal block
<i>and</i>	Asbestos pad
<i>Working</i>	Annealing pan and charcoal
<i>Materials</i>	Gas and air blow torch
	Iron binding wire 22-gauge
	Snub nose pliers
	Jeweler's shears
	Sheet iron 26-gauge, 2 pieces about 4 inches square

## PROCESSES

## ANNEALING

### *Annealing Sheet Metal*

Lay the metal to be annealed on the charcoal block. If the piece is large use an asbestos pad or annealing pan and charcoal.

Light the gas. Start with a loose flame, the size depending upon the gauge and size of the piece to be annealed.

Turn on the air to make the flame blue.

Keep the flame moving.

Remove the flame when every section of the metal has become a glowing red.

### *Cooling Metal*

Cool silver by immersing in water or pickle or let stand until cold enough to handle. Gold 14k or under should not be immersed. See Question 7.

### *Annealing Wire Heavier Than 24 Gauge Which Can Be Coiled*

Coil lengths of wire into a compact circle about three inches in diameter to anneal.

Bind with iron binding wire as shown in Fig. 4. Be sure the ends of the coiled wire do not protrude.

Anneal as described for sheet metal.

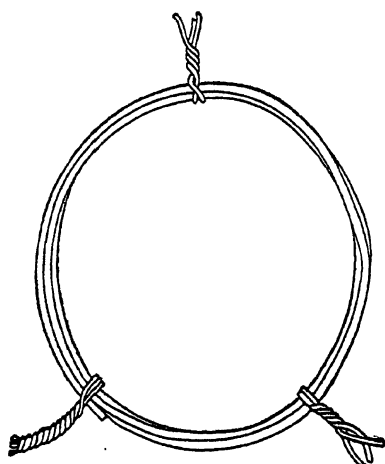


Fig. 4.—Wire coiled and bound for annealing

PROCESSES  
Annealing  
Wire  
Lighter  
Than  
24 Gauge

Coil the wire and bind as above.

Place the coil between two pieces of 26-gauge sheet iron.

Bind the iron sheets together with iron binding wire 22-gauge.

Place upon the charcoal block or asbestos pad or in the annealing pan.

Heat the iron sheet with the blow torch until the top piece of iron is red hot.

Turn the iron sheets over and heat the other sheet until it is red hot.

Cut the binding wire from the iron sheets.

Remove and cool the annealed wire.

Use a large flame for heavy wire or rod which cannot be coiled.

Lay the piece on the asbestos pad or in the annealing pan.

Commence annealing at one end. Continue slowly until the entire length is annealed.

Annealing  
Heavy  
Wire  
or  
Rod

## QUESTIONS

1. *What hardens metal?*

Metal hardens when it has been rolled, twisted, hammered, bent, or drawn.

2. *What methods of annealing are used in making jewelry?*

Metal can be annealed with any heat which is sufficiently intense to produce the red glow required; the gas blow-torch, the gasoline torch, the Bunsen burner, or the alcohol torch are commonly used.

3. *What merit is there in the charcoal block?*

When charcoal becomes hot it retains heat and reflects it back on the metal.

4. *Why is the asbestos block used?*

The asbestos block is used to anneal larger work, also to place under the charcoal block to protect the bench from the flame.

5. *What is the annealing pan?*

The annealing pan is made of sheet iron which rotates on a base. The pan is usually filled with charcoal, which retains and spreads the heat.

6. *When is the annealing pan used?*

It is used when it is more convenient to rotate the pan than to move the flame.

7. *Can silver, copper, and gold be cooled immediately?*

Silver or copper may be cooled immediately by plunging it in water or acid while it is still hot. Gold under 14-K, which becomes brittle if cooled too quickly, should be laid aside to cool.

8. *Should metal hammered on lead be cleaned before it is heated?*

Clean the metal with emery cloth; lead particles eat into the metal when heated.

---

## PICKLING

---

Pickling is the most satisfactory way to clean a working surface. Silver oxidizes when it is exposed to the air and during all processes which require much heat. The coat of oxide must be removed as a clean surface is essential, especially for soldering. Boiling the metal in pickle is the most effective method for cleaning silver although plunging hot metal in pickle is also effective and simpler, particularly when metal is being annealed.

Pickling is used frequently during the construction of an article. It is also used before buffing and finishing. Sulphuric and nitric acids are commonly used for the pickles.

<i>Tools</i>	Sulphuric acid pickle for silver, gold, or copper
<i>and</i>	Earthenware pitcher
<i>Working</i>	Copper pickle pan for sulphuric acid
<i>Materials</i>	Gas plate
	Copper tongs
	Soda, ammonia, and water solution
	Nitric acid pickle for gold
	Porcelain pan for nitric acid
	Granite pan

### PROCESSES

### PREPARATION OF THE PICKLE

#### *Preparing the Pickle*

*For silver, copper, and gold*

Sulphuric formula—1 sulphuric acid to 8 or 10 water.

Prepare in a deep earthenware pitcher to avoid splashing.

Pour the acid into the water; sulphuric acid burns.

Heat in a copper pickle pan.

*For gold 14-K and over*

Nitric Formula—1 nitric acid to 8 water.

Heat in a porcelain pan.

## PROCESSES

## PICKLING

*Pickling .**Silver,**Gold**and**Copper*

Remove all binding wires.

Place the article of silver, gold, or copper to be cleaned in a copper pan.

Pour enough pickle in the pan to cover the article.

Place the pan on the burner.

Boil the article in pickle until pure white if silver; even coral if copper; self color if gold.

*Removing  
from**the**Pickle*

Remove the article from the pickle with copper tongs.

Rinse thoroughly in cold water.

Wash thoroughly in hot water.

Boil in soda, ammonia, and water solution if there are recessed parts.

*Pickling**Gold**14-K**or over*

Place the article of gold in a porcelain pan.

Pour enough pickle in the pan to cover the article.

Boil in pickle until a pure gold color appears.

Remove from the pickle as described above.

Rinse thoroughly.

## QUESTIONS

1. *Does the pickle have to be used immediately?*

The pickle may be kept for future use in porcelain or earthenware.

2. *Why should the binding wire be removed from the article before pickling?*

Pickle reacts on binding wire and discolours silver and gold.

3. *Does this discoloration ruin the article?*

The discoloration may be removed by buffing as the film of discoloration is thin.

4. *How can the borax glaze be removed from the metal after the soldering process?*

The article should be boiled in the pickle to remove the borax glaze.

5. *How is scale removed?*

Remove the scale with fine emery cloth.

---

## FILING

---

Filing is cutting away metal with a file. It is used to remove rough edges and irregular surfaces. The types of files most commonly used in jewelry making are needle, half round, triangular knife, and rat tail. Other files, four or six inches in length, second, and smooth cut, half round, triangular, flat, riddle, and barrette are also used for jewelry construction and finishing.

The technique to be used in filing depends upon the condition of the metal, the type of surfaces or edges to be produced, and the file selected for the filing to be done.

Any sawed or cut edge or clean surface can be filed without being pickled. An annealed or soldered surface to be filed for construction practically always requires cleaning in the pickle to remove the oxidation or the borax glaze. The latter is difficult, and sometimes impossible, to remove with the file.

### *Tools*

### *and*

### *Working*

### *Materials*

### *Pickle*

Copper pickle pan

Gas plate

Copper tongs

Steel surface plate

Wooden mallet

Table, hand, or ring vise

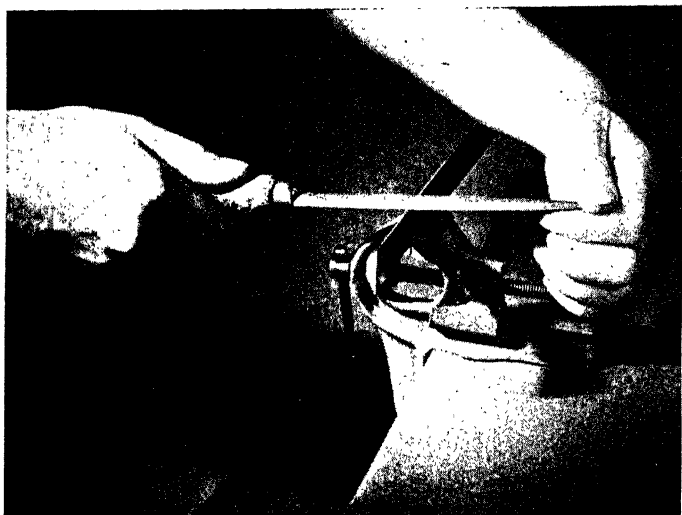
File to suit the work and metal

Emery cloth or scraper

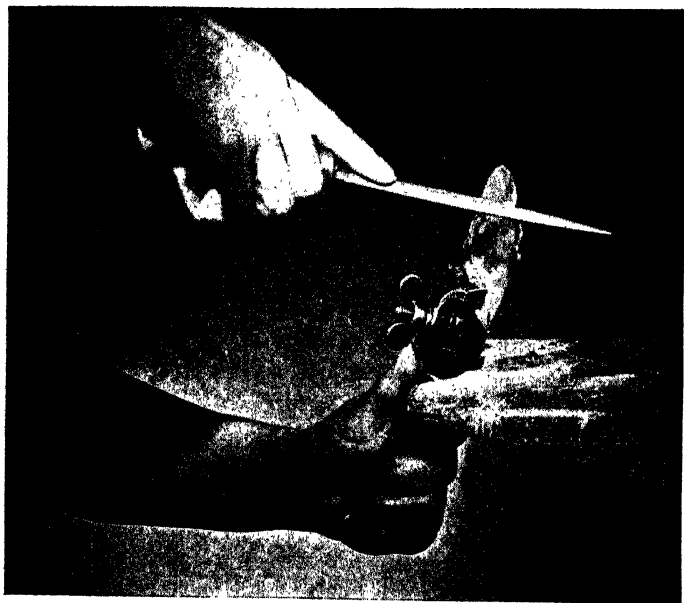
Chalk

File card or brush





*Fig. 5.—Filing heavy gauge metal using two hands*



*Fig. 6.—Filing light gauge metal using one hand*

PROCESSES

PREPARATION FOR FILING THE METAL

<i>Pickling</i> p. 22	Pickle the work to be filed to clean and remove any scale which has formed during any heating process.
<i>Straightening</i>	Place the sheet metal on a steel surface plate. Hammer with a mallet to straighten, if necessary.
<i>Holding the Metal</i>	Hold the article to be filed rigid in a table or hand vise, with pliers, on a shellac stick, or by hand. The selection depends largely upon the size and the shape of the article to be filed.
<i>Large Work</i>	Large work is held in the jaws of the table vise about even with the elbow.
<i>Small Work</i>	Small work may be held higher than the elbow as only arm and wrist movements are necessary for filing.

HOLDING THE FILE

<i>Grasping the File with Two Hands For Heavy Work</i>	Place the handle of the file in the palm of the hand. Grasp the handle so that the ends of the fingers point upward toward the worker and the thumb lengthwise along the handle. Hold the point of the file with the thumb and two fingers of the other hand as shown in Fig. 5. The thumb rests on the top of the file for the greatest pressure, changing to the edge when the pressure has to be lessened.
--	---

## PROCESSES

*Holding**the**File**With**One Hand**For Light**Work**Chalking*

Grasp the handle in the way described above. Turn the hand so that the forefinger lies in the direction of the point, and the thumb lengthwise on the side of the handle as shown in Fig. 6.

Rub the file with chalk to keep the teeth of the file free from metal filings.

## FILING

*Filing*

Place the pressure on the forward stroke of the file.

Remove the pressure on the return stroke; pressure on the back stroke wears off the points of the teeth.

Remove the burr which remains on the metal after the filing process with a file, scraper, or emery cloth.

*Cleaning**the**File*

Clean the file at intervals with a file card or brush.

Rub finer files over the rough surface of cloth.

## QUESTIONS

1. *What is meant by kind or name of file?*

The kind has reference to the shape or style of the file such as: flat, half round.

2. *What is meant by cut?*

The cut refers to the teeth whether single, double, or rasp cut. It also refers to the fineness of the teeth.

3. *What files are usually used for jewelry work?*

Needle files in assorted shapes: half round, flat taper, knife,

barrette, round, square and riddle, half round files 4 or 6 inches long, single cut, and smooth.

4. *How should irregular shapes and curved lines be filed?*

The strokes should blend with and keep the contour or the shape of the line or form.

5. *How often should a file be cleaned?*

The file should be cleaned at intervals during the filing process depending upon the nature of the material being filed and the readiness with which the file becomes clogged. Files should be always cleaned before being put away.

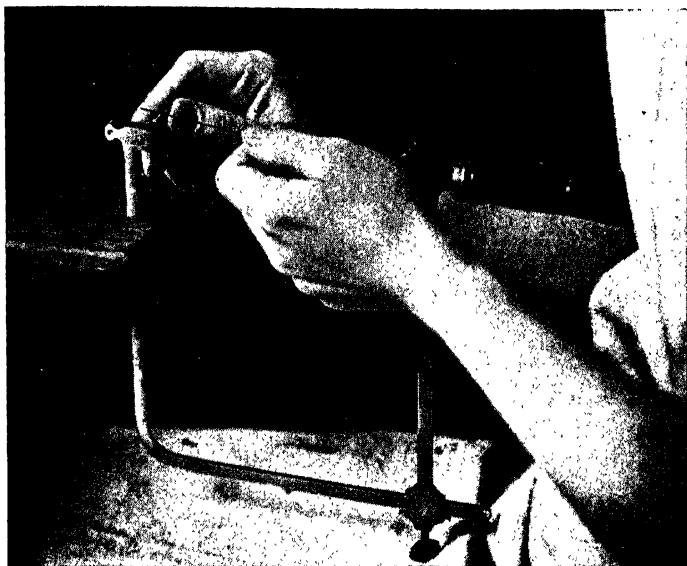
6. *How can oil be removed from new files?*

Rub chalk on new files to remove the oil.

---



*Fig. 7.—Sawing. The saw perpendicular to the metal to be sawed*



*Fig. 8.—Setting the saw blade*

---

## SAWING

---

Sawing is cutting metal to a line. The jeweler's saw consists of an adjustable metal frame into which fine saw blades are fitted. Blades used for gold and silver 18-gauge and lighter are numbered 1/0 through 8/0. Heavier blades used for heavier gauges are numbered 1, 2, etc.

Sawed lines which may be straight, curved, or angular frequently form the outline or shape of a solid design. When the design is cut out or pierced, the background is cut out and the design remains in the metal.

Since the lines of sawing have a close relationship to the design of the article to be fashioned, it is important that the sawing follow the lines as accurately as possible. Filing may remedy

irregular sawing if breaks occur outside the traced line of the design, but if they occur inside the traced outline, filing cuts away and alters the shape.

When open work is made by piercing, the regularity of a line is quite important because of the difficulty of filing inside edges and maintaining adequate points of contact which keep the pierced pattern in place and give it strength.

<i>Tools</i>	Soft pointed pencil—thin tracing paper—pum-
<i>and</i>	ice powder
<i>Working</i>	Gas plate, electric plate, Bunsen burner, blow
<i>Materials</i>	torch
	White beeswax
	Burnisher or any small tool with a smooth pol-
	ished surface
	Scratch awl
	Soft cloth
	Jeweler's saw frame
	Bench pin with V cut out
	Jeweler's saw blades
	Hammer or mallet
	Center punch
	Twist drill
	Hand drill
	Files
	Shellac, alcohol, dye solution
	Carbon paper
	Glue

## PROCESSES

## PREPARATION FOR SAWING THE PATTERN

### *Tracing*

Trace the design on thin tracing paper with a soft, sharp pointed pencil.

## PROCESSES

*Cleaning*

Rub the metal to be used for the article with dry pumice powder.

*Waxing*

Warm the metal and melt a small amount of beeswax on the surface; only a thin film of wax should remain on the surface.

Let the metal cool until the wax sets.

*Transferring*

Place the tracing so the pencil lines of the traced design touch the waxed surface.

*the**Pattern*

Hold the tracing paper firmly.

*to the*

Rub the tracing paper with a burnisher or any small tool with a smooth surface.

*Metal*

Remove the tracing paper; an exact pattern should be transferred on the surface of the wax. Scratch the transferred design with a scratch awl through the wax into the metal.

Warm the metal and remove the wax from the metal with a soft cloth.

*Setting*

The position of the worker for sawing should be as follows: the shoulder about three inches above the bench pin and the right arm in line with the V of the bench pin.

*the Blade*

Place the upper arm of the saw frame in the V of the bench pin.

*in the*

Hold the handle of the frame against the body as shown in Fig. 8.

*Frame*

Fasten the blade in the jaw of the saw frame nearest the handle; the teeth must point away from the saw frame and down toward the handle.

Press the saw frame thus held to shorten the span about one-fourth inch.

Place the loose end of the saw blade in the upper jaw of the saw frame; tighten the thumb screw.



## PROCESSES

Remove the pressure; the saw blade thus inserted should be taut. Rub a small amount of wax on the blade to make it run easily.

*Holding  
the  
Metal*

The worker sits in the same position as described above. Place the metal flat, the part to be sawed over the V of the bench pin.

Hold the metal tight against the bench pin with the fingers of the left hand.

Place the thumb on the underside of the bench pin.

*Holding  
the  
Saw Frame*

Grasp the handle of the saw frame firmly with the little finger and thumb and hold the other three fingers loosely on the handle.

Place the saw blade at right angles to the edge to be sawed as shown in Fig. 7.

## SAWING

*Sawing*

Saw away from the worker; make each stroke the length of the saw blade; the blade should not be pressed too firmly against the metal.

Move the forearm up and down while sawing.

*Straight  
Lines*

Keep the back of the saw frame in a vertical position.

*Curved  
Lines*

Move the saw frame slowly from right to left as the saw blade follows the curve of the line.

*Angles*

Move the saw with short quick strokes about the center of the blade without going forward, turn the metal or saw frame to allow the saw to turn the angle.

*Filing  
p. 25*

File the edge smooth and even.

## PROCESSES

## PREPARATION FOR PIERCING

*Transferring*  
p. 33

Transfer the design to the metal as described above.

*Center  
Punching*

Depressions are made in the metal with the center punch and hammer to guide the drill while boring holes in all the sections to be sawed out. The drilled holes must not interfere with the traced outline of the design.

*Drilling*

Place the twist drill in the chuck of the hand drill.

Drill holes in the metal as marked with the center punch; the metal must be supported from below and held firmly.

*Setting  
the  
Blade  
in the  
Frame*  
p. 33

Set the blade in the lower jaw of the saw frame as described above.

Thread the loose end of the blade through one of the drilled holes nearest the center of the design.

Hold the metal to be pierced against the lower jaw of the saw frame.

Fasten the loose end of the blade in the upper jaw as described above.

## PIERCING

*Sawing*  
p. 31

Saw out the parts nearest the center first, those nearest the outside border last. Follow the directions under sawing.

# OTHER METHODS OF TRANSFERRING THE DESIGN

## PROCESSES

### *Painted Method*

The following mixtures may be used to paint the metal before transferring the pattern.

Formula—1 part liquid shellac

3 parts alcohol

Enough methol violet dye to color solution deep violet.

Paint the above mixture on the metal surface and allow to dry.

Place the pattern on the painted surface.

Scratch the pattern on the metal.

### *Carbon Method*

Carbon paper may be used for large surfaces to transfer the pattern onto the metal.

Rub the surface of the metal with pumice powder.

Place the carbon paper with the glossy side on the metal.

Place the traced design on top of the carbon paper.

Hold firmly to the metal.

Follow the outline of the pattern with a hard pencil.

Remove the tracing and the carbon paper. The design should be transferred on the surface of the metal.

Scratch the design into the metal with a scratch awl.

Wash off carbon lines.

### *Pricked Method*

Trace the design on thin tracing paper.

Clean the metal with pumice powder.

Spread a thin film of glue over the surface of the metal.

Place the traced design on the metal.

With a pointed tool prick the design through the tracing paper into the metal. The pricks should be very close together.

Remove the tracing paper and glue with warm water.

Scratch the design into the metal following the pricked marks.

### QUESTIONS

1. *What size saw blade is usually used by beginning classes?*  
Size 1/0 or 2/0 for light gauge, size 1 for 14-gauge or heavier.

2. *What should be done if the saw blade becomes stuck during the sawing process?*  
Do not force the blade. Remove the pressure and the blade should adjust itself.

3. *Can the saw blade be backed out on a sawed line after the sawing process has been started?*  
The saw blade can be backed out by keeping the saw frame in the sawing position, moving it up and down while draw it out toward the worker.

4. *If a rough edge of metal is left on the sawed line, how should this be removed?*  
This rough edge of metal is called a burr and should be removed by a file, scraper, or emery cloth to smooth the edges.

---

## SOLDERING

---

The purpose of soldering is to hold pieces of metal together. In all soldering, flux, solder, and heat are necessary. Binding is often essential to insure a close fit as illustrated in Figs. 12 and 13.

Hard solder is used to solder gold and silver jewelry and larger pieces of silverware. Either hard or soft solder is used to solder copper and brass. Soft solder is used to solder pewter and tin and other metals but is not practical for jewelry because it lacks strength and its color is different from that of silver or gold. Sometimes soft solder is used for jewelry repair.

Different qualities of solder used for jewelry melt at different temperatures depending upon the kind and amount of alloy used. Hard solders contain alloys different from those used for soft solder.

Soldering must have sufficient strength to hold pieces together satisfactorily but the solder must not show on the finished work. When an article is to be built up of a number of pieces and has to be heated many times during the construction, the first pieces are put together with hard solder which melts at a high temperature. As other parts are added, easy or medium flowing hard solder which melts at a lower temperature is used.

### *Types of Solders*

#### Hard Solders

##### Silver Solder

Silver solder sheet 28-gauge

Hard flowing

Medium flowing

Easy flowing

##### Gold Solder

Gold solder 28-gauge—the same color, three or more karats lower than the gold used in the article to be soldered

## Soft Solder

## Lead and Tin

Wire solder—50% lead and 50% tin or  
40% lead and 60% tin

*Tools**and**Working**Materials*

Pickle (sulphuric acid solution)

Copper pickle pan

Copper tongs

Gas plate

File or scraper

Borax slate for borax—or china saucer for other  
prepared flux

Prepared borax or prepared flux for hard solder

Solder

Dividers

Jeweler's shears

Charcoal block

Binding wire

Small camel's hair brush

Gas and air blow torch

Steel tweezers

Scotch stone

Flux—one part zinc chloride, one part water

Electric soldering iron or soldering iron

Soldering furnace or gas plate

Sal ammoniac

Wire solder—lead and tin

Gum tragacanth

Boric acid powder  $\frac{1}{3}$  and alcohol  $\frac{2}{3}$ 

Rouge paste

Borax and water solution

Soldering nest

## PROCESSES

PREPARATION FOR SOLDERING WITH  
HARD SOLDER

*Pickling*  
p. 22

Pickle the metal to be soldered; the surface must be clean because dirt interferes with the flow of the solder.

Wash thoroughly in water.

*Filing*  
p. 25

File or scrape all joints to clean.

*Preparing  
the  
Flux*

Pour a small quantity of water into the borax slate.

Rub the prepared borax on the slate until the water becomes creamy; it should be thicker in consistency for silver and copper than for gold. This mixture called flux is painted on the metal to exclude the air and to prevent heat from forming oxides on the metal. Other flux prepared for hard solder may be used.

*Cleaning  
the  
Solder*

Remove the dirt and tarnish from the solder with a scraper or file.

*Marking  
Holding  
Cutting  
the  
Solder*

Scratch lines on the solder sheet  $\frac{1}{16}$  of an inch apart.

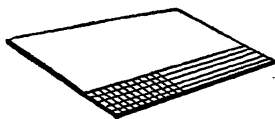


Fig. 9.—Solder marked for cutting

Cut across the lines as shown in Fig. 9.

Hold the solder between the thumb and first finger. Let the ball of the second finger rest under the cut edge. Now cut along the scratched lines, at right angles to the first cuts made.

## PROCESSES

Place the small pieces of cut solder on the edge of the borax slate or saucer.

*Placing  
the  
Article*

Place the pieces to be joined by soldering on the charcoal or asbestos block. Be sure the surfaces which are to be united touch each other at all points.



*Fig. 10. — Charcoal block used when soldering and annealing*

*Binding*

Bind pieces together, if necessary, with annealed iron binding wire as shown in Figs. 12 and 13.

*Applying  
the  
Flux  
and  
Solder*

Apply the flux with a small camel's hair brush to the parts to be soldered.

Dampen the brush and pick up the small pieces of solder with the point of the brush.

Place the bits of solder so that they touch the pieces to be united.

*Regulating  
the  
Flame*

Light the blow torch.

Regulate the air so as to make the gas flame blue. The size of the flame to be used depends upon the weight of the metal to be united or the area to be heated or both.

## SOLDERING

*Applying  
the  
Heat  
and  
Soldering*

Apply the heat gradually to the parts to be united, if possible on the opposite side from where the solder is placed so that the solder will be drawn toward the joint rather than away from it.

Allow the moisture in the flux to evaporate so the flux will crystallize and hold the solder in



## PROCESSES

place; flux covers and protects the surface from oxidation.

Heat the article so that all parts will become hot at the same time; solder in liquid form runs to the hottest part.

Move the torch away from the metal now and then to see if any part is getting overheated; solder overheated eats into the metal.

Apply a direct flame on the solder and heat it quickly after the moisture in the flux has evaporated.

Melt the solder so that it runs and joins all parts firmly together; solder becomes solid almost immediately when the heat is removed.

Apply more solder dipped in flux to the joint with tweezers during the soldering process if necessary.

*Examining  
the Joint  
Remelting  
the Solder  
Filling  
the  
Cracks*

Examine the joint.

Apply more flux and heat if the solder has not melted.

Apply more flux, solder and heat if cracks appear which are not wider than the thickness of a sheet of paper.

Insert a piece of metal in a crack or opening too large to be filled with solder. Apply flux, solder and heat.

File off any excess metal.

*Pickling  
Cleaning  
p. 70*

Clean in pickle.

Rinse in cold water.

Remove any excess solder with a scraper, file, or scotch stone dipped in water. The tool to be used depends upon the amount and thickness of the softer solder to be removed.

PROCESSES

PREPARATION FOR SOLDERING WITH  
SOFT SOLDER

*The Metal*

*Cleaning* Clean all surfaces to be joined with solder with a file or scraper.

*The Flux*

Dissolve zinc in hydrochloric acid to form a zinc chloride.

Strain and add an equal amount of water.

Electricians' paste may also be used for the flux.

*The Soldering Iron*

*Heating* Place the soldering iron in a gas soldering furnace or gas plate or use an electric soldering iron.

Heat the soldering iron red hot.

*Cleaning* File all faces of the soldering iron until they are bright copper.

Dip in zinc chloride solution.

*Tinning the* Place a small piece of solder on a bar of sal ammoniac.

*Soldering Iron* Rub the soldering iron on the sal ammoniac and the solder until the end of the soldering iron has a thin coating of solder on each face.

*Soldering*

*Soldering* Place flux (zinc chloride solution or soldering paste) on the metal to be joined.

Dip the hot iron in the zinc chloride.

Pick up a small amount of solder on the point of the soldering iron.

Apply the soldering iron to the metal and move along the surface to be soldered; a blow torch may be used in place of the soldering iron.

## SPECIAL SOLDERING

Many problems arise in soldering. This section deals with some of the most common of these problems.

## PROCESSES

<i>Keeping Balls and Small Wires In Place While Soldering</i>	Mix gum tragacanth with water to form a paste-like mixture. Apply this mixture to the balls and wires before the flux and the solder have been applied; this mixture does not affect the flow of the solder. Place the balls or other small pieces in the position in which they are to be soldered. Place the flame on the side opposite the solder. Draw the heat through the ball and the piece to which it is soldered.
<i>Soldering Balls Together</i>	Place the solder so that it touches a ball and the one next to it without holding them apart.
<i>Holding Parts Together While Soldering</i>	Hold pieces together while soldering with iron binding wire, cotter pins, or pins made of heavy iron binding wire rolled flat and formed into pins as shown in Figs. 12 and 13.
<i>Protecting Soldered Parts</i>	Soldered parts frequently have to be protected from intense heat to keep them from falling apart. Surfaces also have to be protected to prevent burning. The two methods commonly used are given below:
<i>Boric Acid Alcohol Solution</i>	Apply boric acid and alcohol solution to the article. Burn off the alcohol, apply solder and flux; this solution will not affect the flow of the solder and gives a slight protection to the metal.

## PROCESSES

*Rouge  
Paste*

Apply rouge paste to all parts to be protected. Dry out all moisture before the flux and solder are applied.

Keep the rouge away from all parts to be united with solder; rouge interferes with the flow of the solder.

Wash in clear water to remove the rouge before pickling.

*Soldering  
Gold and  
Silver  
Together*

Use silver solder when soldering gold and silver together.

*Soldering  
a Small  
Piece  
to a  
Large  
Piece*

In soldering a small piece of metal on a larger or heavier piece, place the larger piece on the charcoal block when possible.

Direct the flame on the larger piece. The heat from the larger piece often heats the smaller piece sufficiently so that both pieces become hot at the same time which is important.

Direct a blast of heat on the smaller part when the larger part has reached a dull red to bring both pieces to the same temperature at the same time.

*Soldering  
Hollow  
Pieces*

A small hole should be left for an air escape if hollow pieces are soldered together or on a flat surface.

*Unsoldering  
Joints*

Apply rouge paste to the parts which are to remain soldered.

Paint the joints to be unsoldered with flux.

Direct the flame on the piece to be unsoldered and the piece to which it is soldered.

Melt the solder.

## PROCESSES

Lift off the piece which is unsoldered. The article may have to be bound to the charcoal block and the unsoldered piece pushed off.

*Soldering  
Copper*

Bind copper pieces which are to be soldered together.

Boil in a solution of borax and water.

Let the solution dry on the surface of the metal to form a coating.

Apply flux, solder, and heat as described above.

*Using  
the  
Soldering  
Nest*

Place the metal on the soldering nest as shown in Fig. 11 to admit the flame around and under the metal evenly.

## QUESTIONS

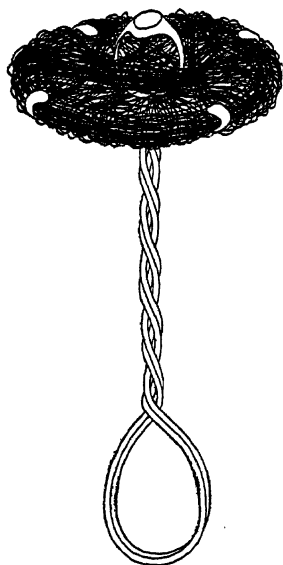


Fig. 11.—Soldering nest used when soldering

1. *What gauge wire is used for binding?*

Binding wire comes in many gauges; number 28 or 32 for fine work, 24 or 26 for medium weight metal, 20 or 22 for heavier work. 12-, 14-, or 18-gauge wire may be rolled flat to make pins or clamps. (Figs. 12 and 13) Fine wire can be twisted evenly to make it heavier and still flexible.

2. *Do the metal and the binding wire expand when heated?*

Both the metal and the wire expand when heat is applied,

3. *Will the wires cut into the thin metal?*

Sometimes the metal expands first and is cut by the wires. Make Z-shaped kinks in the wire to avoid cutting. (Fig. 13)

4. *Should the whole piece be heated or only the parts to be united?*

The flame should be kept moving over the whole piece until it becomes a dull red. As heat is applied remove the flame at times to see if any part is red hot and likely to burn. This part will show at once by its glow. When the whole piece is sufficiently hot, direct the flame on the joint.

5. *Why does the solder roll into a ball and not melt?*

When this happens a hotter flame is required and sometimes more flux should be applied.

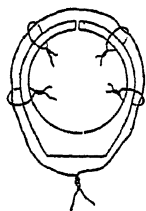
6. *Is it usual to pickle the work after each soldering?*

It is best to pickle the work after each soldering to clean the metal.

---

**BINDING WIRE  
ITS USE IN SOLDERING**

**BINDING WIRE—ITS USE IN  
SOLDERING**

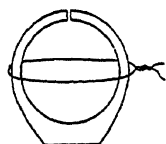


Slip four small loose loops of binding wire on the ring shank.

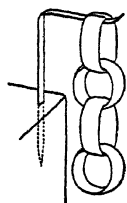
Insert binding wire under the loops around the ring shank.

Twist the wire tightly to join the ends of the shank.

Tighten the small loops to hold the wire in place.

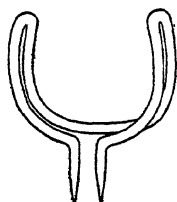


Make a loop of binding wire across the ring shank; tighten the loop until the ends of the shank meet.

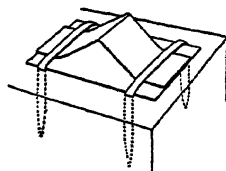


Bend flat iron binding wire at a right angle. Point and insert one end into the charcoal block.

Place the joint of the ring on the wire.



Bend 14- or 18-gauge binding wire to form a standard to hold the ring shank.



Make staples of heavy flat binding wire. Point the ends to insert in the charcoal block to hold pieces together.

*Fig. 12.—Pieces bound and clamped for soldering*

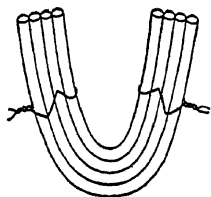
## BINDING WIRE—ITS USE IN SOLDERING

### BINDING WIRE ITS USE IN SOLDERING

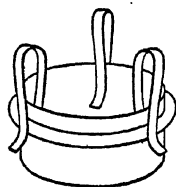
Bind a sphere or curved surface in place with a double loop of binding wire.



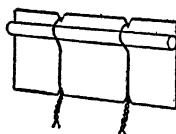
Hold wires together with a Z-formed loop of binding wire. This keeps the binding wire from cutting into the metal.



Make cotter pins of heavy flat binding wire to clamp on curved or flat surfaces.



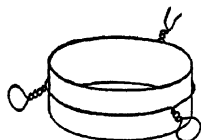
File V-shaped nicks in the edge of the metal to hold the binding wire in place.



Bind heavy flat binding wire under joints to make a firm foundation.

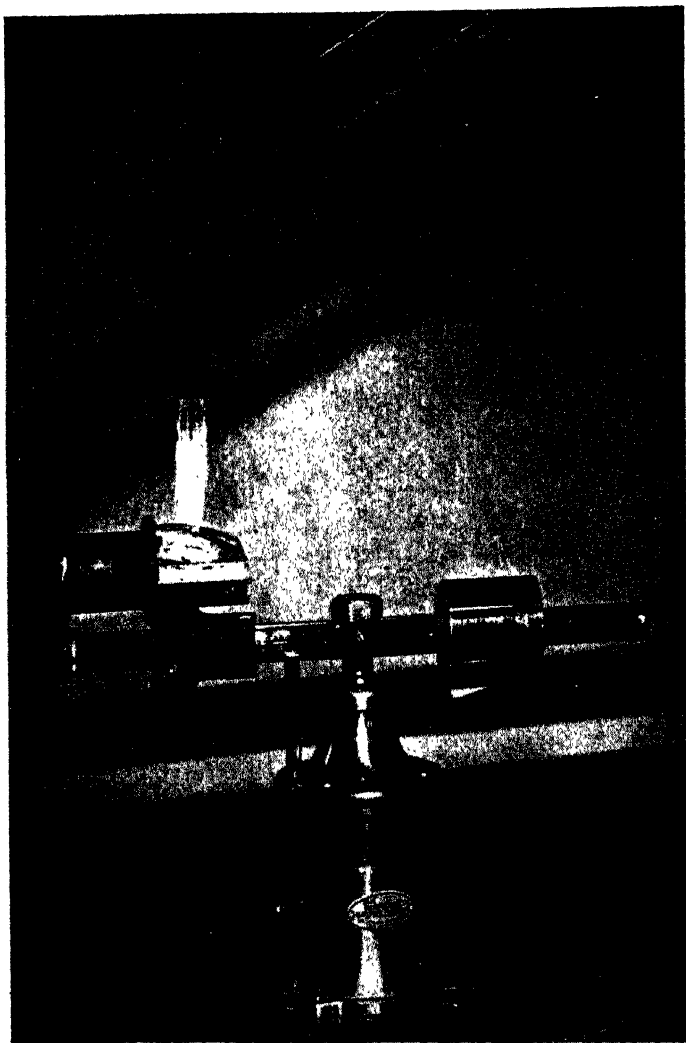


Loop binding wire around a cylinder. Tighten the loop in several places to bring the joint together.



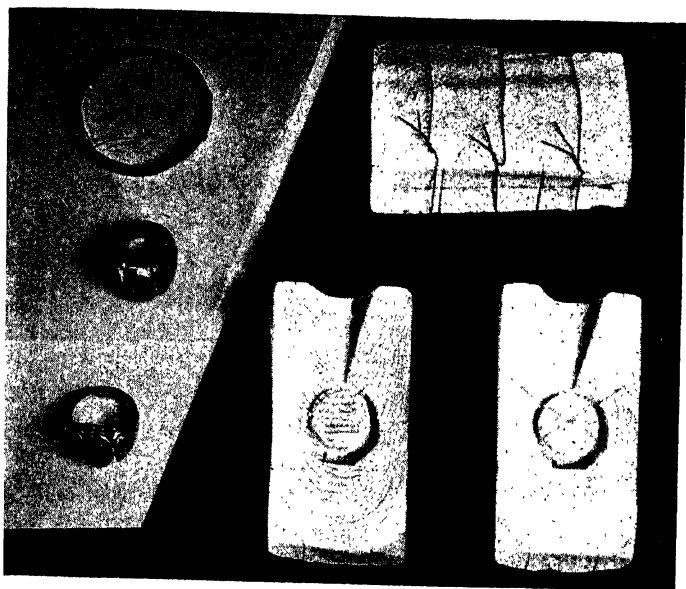
*Fig. 13.—Pieces bound and clamped for soldering*





*Courtesy of Cleveland Dental Mfg. Co.*

*Fig. 14.—Centrifugal force casting machine*



*Fig. 15.—Cuttle-bone mold, tin pattern and finished ring*

---

## CASTING

---

Castings are made by pouring molten metal into a mold formed in cuttle-bone, sand, or plaster or by forcing molten metal into an investment. All methods require a pattern which may be made of tin, lead, or wax. Metal patterns must be filed to form and size. The wax patterns are modeled with a tool.

All methods require a mold. The cuttle-bone mold and the more recent method of casting in dental investment by means of a casting machine operated by centrifugal force are the two methods described in this book.

When cuttle-bone is used for the mold two or more pieces are required. When the soft porous side of the cuttle-bone is cut, sawed, and rubbed flat or surfaced it is ready for use. The pattern

of lead or tin is pressed into the flat surface of one piece far enough to make the depression required. This depression, which is called the mold, must be half the depth of the pattern. The other half is made in the other portion of the cuttle-bone by pressing the pattern into it until the two surfaces meet. When cuttle-bone is used the pattern must be free from undercuts which destroy the mold when the pattern is removed. This type of casting requires a funnel to admit the metal to the mold, also air vents in the cuttle-bone to allow air to escape when the metal is poured into the mold as shown in Fig. 15.

• When dental investment is used for the mold, dental casting wax is used to form the pattern. Undercuts do not interfere with the making of the mold for investment because the wax pattern is taken out by means of heat, hence there is no possibility of breaking. The metal is forced into the mold by centrifugal force as shown in Fig. 14.

### METAL CASTING IN CUTTLE-BONE MOLD

<i>Tools</i>	Bar tin
<i>and</i>	Rolling mill
<i>Working</i>	Shellac, alcohol, and dye solution
<i>Materials</i>	Bench pin
	Jeweler's saw frame
	Jeweler's saw blades #1
	Flat file six-inch half round
	File brush
	Chalk
	Cuttle-bone
	Graphite powdered
	Knife
	Binding wire 26-gauge
	Jeweler's shears

<i>Tools</i>	Jeweler's scales
<i>and</i>	Pickle
<i>Working</i>	Copper pickle pan
<i>Materials</i>	Copper tongs
	Gas plate
	Crucible
	Tongs
	Blow torch gas and air
	Powdered borax or other reducing flux
	Carving or chasing tools
	Emery cloth #1
	Polishing motor
	Tripoli cake
	Felt buffing wheel
	Bristle buffing wheel

## PREPARATION FOR CASTING THE METAL PATTERN

### PROCESSES

<i>Rolling</i>	Roll the bar tin the correct thickness.
<i>Transferring the Design</i> p. 36	Transfer the design (shellac, alcohol, and dye solution).
<i>Sawing</i> p. 31	Saw the outline out of bar tin.
<i>Filing</i> p. 25	File all surfaces, contours, and planes.
	Note: The model or pattern may be modeled in surfaces or planes and the design gone over with carving or chasing tools on the casting. Undercuts must be avoided.

## PROCESSES

## THE MOLD OF CUTTLE-BONE

*Selecting the  
Cuttle-bone*

Select two pieces of cuttle-bone as thick and as perfect as possible.

*Sawing*

Saw with a jeweler's saw blade through the soft part of the cuttle-bone at one end; remove the saw when it reaches the hard part of the bone and break off the piece.

Repeat the same method with the other end and the two sides, leaving a piece rectangular in shape as shown in Fig. 15.

Repeat the above with the other piece of cuttle-bone, sawing it as nearly as possible to the size of the piece already sawed.

*Facing*

Saw off part of the bow on the soft side of each piece.

Rub the side thus faced on a flat smooth board to get a larger flat surface.

*Powdering  
with  
Graphite*

Rub a small amount of graphite on both smooth surfaces to get a cleaner impression.

*Placing  
the  
Pattern*

Hold the cuttle-bone in the palm of the hand.

Place the pattern of tin not too near the end on the flat surface of the cuttle-bone prepared for it. The lightest end, which will be the smallest depression, should be at the top adjoining the funnel.

*Forming  
the  
Mold*

Press the pattern half way into the cuttle-bone. Place the other piece of cuttle-bone on top of the pattern which is embedded in the cuttle-bone.

Press slowly until the two flat surfaces of the

- ROCESSES      cuttle-bone meet; the cuttle-bone should fit well into the palms to relieve the strain.
- Marking*      Mark with the saw blade several lines on the ends and the sides so the two pieces will register exactly when put together again.
- Register*
- Removing*      Separate the two pieces of cuttle-bone.
- Remove*      Remove the tin pattern.
- Examine*      Examine the mold to be sure that all parts have registered and the mold is clean.
- Remove the mold*
- Cutting*      Cut a funnel-shaped opening in both pieces with a knife to extend from the top or small end of the cuttle-bone to the mold as shown in Fig. 15.
- Funnel*
- Ends*      Cut vents with a saw blade in both pieces to allow air to escape from the mold as the metal is being poured.
- Binding*      Bind the two pieces of cuttle-bone together with 26-gauge binding wire. Be sure they register.
- Place the cuttle-bone mold on the bench, funnel side up.

## THE METAL TO BE MELTED

- Weighing*      Weigh the tin pattern—the amount of silver or gold required for melting will be two and a half times this weight.
- Pickling*      Clean the metal to be melted for the casting in pickle.
- 22      Wash in cold water.

## PROCESSES

## CASTING

*Melting  
the  
Metal*

Place the metal in a crucible.

Hold the crucible firmly with tongs in the left hand.

Hold the blow torch in the right hand.

Direct a large hot flame directly on the metal until it is hot, then add borax or prepared reducing flux. Continue to heat the metal until it spins; add more borax or prepared reducing flux, just before pouring; this helps to fuse the metal and keeps it from oxidizing.

*Pouring  
the  
Metal  
into  
the  
Mold*

Play the flame on the metal during the pouring; the metal must be kept in a fluid state or the casting will be imperfect.

Pour with the left hand, let the metal run into the funnel prepared for it in the cuttle-bone.

Let the metal cool before removing the casting from the mold.

## REMOVING THE CASTING

*Removing  
the Casting  
from the  
Mold*

Cut the binding wire holding the mold together.  
Open the mold.

Remove the casting.

## FINISHING

*Sawing  
the Button  
and  
Excess  
Metal*

Saw off any extra metal attached to the casting; the button and excess metal which has formed in the vents.

## PROCESSES

Pickling	Clean in pickle.
. 22	Rinse in cold water.
Polishing	File and emery the rough surface.
Carving	Sharpen the design on the casting with a carving or tracing tool.
. 87	
Polishing	Buff with tripoli and a felt or bristle buffing wheel.
. 71	

## QUESTIONS

*What is undercutting?*

To cut away or shape so as to leave an overhanging portion or relief.

*Why should undercuts be avoided in the pattern for a casting?*

Undercuts in the pattern extend into the cuttle-bone beyond the outline and tear or break the form of the mold when the pattern is removed.

*Can metal be overheated during the melting process?*

Yes. Overheating the metal causes more gas to be absorbed; when this gas escapes pitted marks are left in the casting.

*Why is a hot flame necessary for melting?*

If the metal is heated too slowly it absorbs too much gas, which leaves pit marks in the casting.

*Can borax be used in place of the prepared reducing flux?*

Borax can be used but it does not have the reducing quality of the prepared reducing flux.



METAL CASTING WITH CENTRIFUGAL  
FORCE IN DENTAL INVESTMENT

<i>Tools</i>	Blue dental modeling wax
<i>and</i>	Steel tool—small knife blade or dental tool
<i>Working</i>	Bunsen burner
<i>Materials</i>	Oil
	Ring mandrel
	Gravers
	Graduate glass cylinder
	Fine wire
	Sprue pin
	Sprue former
	Small hair brush
	Soap powder
	Dental casting investment
	Rubber dish
	Casting flask
	Spatula
	Pickle
	Copper pickle pan
	Copper tongs
	Crucible
	Asbestos pad
	Centrifugal force casting machine (Fig. 14)
	Wire screen
	Tripod
	Clay flower pot—taller than the flask
	Iron tongs
	File
	Gas and air blow torch
	Dental reducing flux
	Jeweler's saw frame
	Jeweler's saw blades #1

<i>Tools</i>	Files—needle and 6-inch half round
<i>and</i>	Emery cloth
<i>Working</i>	Scotch stone
<i>Materials</i>	Polishing motor
	Felt and bristle buffing wheels
	Tripoli cake
	Granite pan
	Soda, ammonia, and water solution
	Chamois or cloth buffing wheel
	Rouge stick

## PREPARATION FOR CASTING THE WAX PATTERN

### PROCESSES

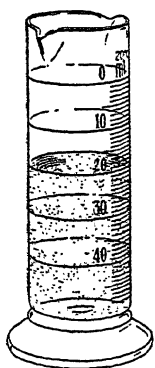
<i>Heating the Wax</i>	<p>Pass dental casting wax over a soft flame of a Bunsen burner or torch; this requires a series of quick heats to soften thoroughly.</p> <p>Wait until the gloss disappears from the wax before modeling.</p> <p>Use wax stick for rings or if there is to be much carving. Use blue sheet wax for flat objects not to be carved.</p>
<i>Modeling the Form</i>	<p>Shape the wax with the fingers and a steel tool. The wax and the tool must be warmed several times during the modeling.</p> <p>Model a ring shank over a well-oiled ring mandrel. Turn the pattern on a warm mandrel to smooth the inside of the ring. Let the wax pattern remain on the mandrel, when possible, while forming or carving the outside shape and design. Make a size smaller than the required size.</p>

## PROCESSES

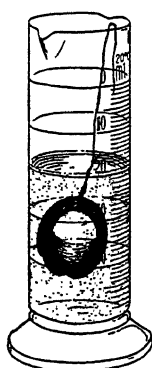
*Determining  
the  
Amount  
of Metal  
Required*

Fill a graduate cylinder partly full of water as shown in Fig. 16.

Fasten a fine wire on the wax pattern.



*Fig. 16.—Graduate cylinder containing water for measuring*



*Fig. 17.—Measuring the volume of the wax pattern*

Lower the pattern into the cylinder; note the amount of water displaced by the wax pattern as shown in Fig. 17.

Remove the pattern from the cylinder; note that the water recedes to the original mark on the graduate cylinder.

Drop into the graduate cylinder enough metal to bring the water up to the line registered when the pattern was in the cylinder. Add a little more silver to raise the water about one cc. or ml. to allow for the wax used for the sprue pin and wax ball.

## PROCESSES

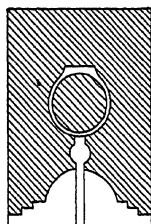
*Preparing  
the**Sprue  
Former*

Rub the sprue former with a wire brush to clean thoroughly.

Rub a small amount of oil on the rim of the sprue former so the invested flask can be removed easily.

*Placing  
the**Wax Ball*

Place a  $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch wax bead on the sprue pin to prevent porosity in the casting.



*Fig. 18.—Wax pattern held on a sprue pin and sprue former*

*Placing  
the  
Pattern*

Place the pattern firmly on the sprue pin.

*Note:* Place the ring pattern with the center of the back of the shank firmly in the point of the sprue pin and seal with wax as shown in Fig. 18.

The wax pattern plus the sprue former and the sprue pin must be about  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch below the rim of the flask.

*Sealing  
the  
Ball  
Thickening  
the  
Sprue Pin*

Seal the wax bead to the sprue pin about  $\frac{1}{16}$  inch from the wax pattern (See Question 3). Thicken the section of the sprue pin between the wax ball and the pattern.

## PROCESSES

*Placing  
the*

*Sprue Pin  
in the  
Sprue  
Former*

Place the sprue pin in the sprue former; hold to the sprue former with a bit of wax.

*Washing  
the  
Pattern*

Use a soft brush and soap powder to paint the pattern. This cleans off any extra particles of wax and makes the pattern smooth.  
Brush with water.

## INVESTING THE PATTERN

*Mixing  
the  
Investment*

Use a rubber dish or half a rubber ball in which to mix the dental casting investment.  
Add water to the investment and stir to a smooth, thick, creamy consistency.

*Coating  
the  
Pattern*

Paint the pattern with the mixed investment and vibrate during this process.  
Sprinkle the painted surface with dry investment until the excess water has been absorbed; the investment should completely cover the pattern  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch thick. Set aside about twenty minutes until the investment hardens.

*Placing  
the  
Flask  
on the  
Sprue  
Former*

Place the casting flask on the rim of the sprue former which holds the sprue pin and the pattern.  
Scratch a line on the outside of the flask to indicate the position of the pattern.

## PROCESSES

Investing  
the  
pattern

Make a thin mixture of investment. Pour the investment into the flask a little at a time and vibrate until the investment is even with the top of the flask.

Run the spatula across the top of the flask to remove any excess investment.

Let the investment stand until it sets.

Removing  
the  
flask  
from the  
sprue  
former

Heat the base of the sprue former slightly with a loose flame.

Tap the base of the sprue former lightly.

Twist the sprue former from the flask. If the sprue pin is held in the investment, heat the pin and remove from the investment with the pliers.

Removing  
excess  
investment

Clean the investment from the inside rim of the flask where it has rested on the sprue former.

Drying  
the Invested  
flask

Let the invested flask dry overnight or for several hours in an oven with slow heat.

## THE METAL TO BE CAST

Pickling  
22

Pickle the metal.

Preparing  
the  
crucible

Place a dampened asbestos pad in the bottom of the crucible.

Place the metal to be cast in the crucible.

Placing  
the  
crucible

Place the crucible on the crucible carrier, the lip end through the hole in the arm.

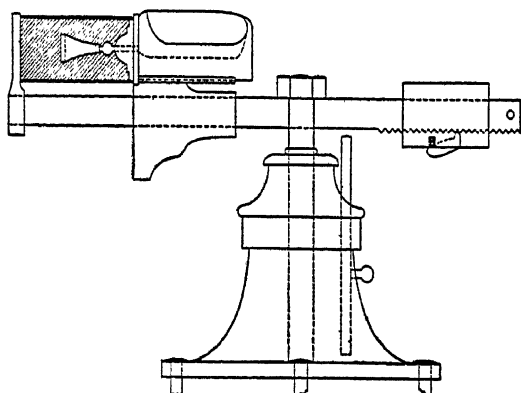
the  
machine

## PROCESSES

## BALANCING THE MACHINE

*Placing  
the  
Invested  
Flask  
in the  
Machine*

Place the flask in the machine with the sprue hole facing the crucible and fasten by sliding the crucible carrier until it holds the flask firmly, as shown in Fig. 19.



*Courtesy of Cleveland Dental Mfg. Co.*

*Fig. 19.—Casting machine in balance. The carrier holding the invested flask and crucible containing metal for the casting*

*Balancing  
the  
Machine*

Loosen the nut which holds the arm rigid. Balance the arm by sliding the counterpoise to the proper notch.

Tighten the nut after balancing. The machine must be balanced before the hot investment flask is put in place; investment cools very quickly.

Remove the invested flask from the carrier.

## PROCESSES

## BAKING THE INVESTMENT

- Baking*  
*the*  
*invested*  
*flask*
- Place the flask on an iron screen with the sprue hole down.
- Place the iron screen on a tripod with the sprue hole over the medium blue flame of a Bunsen burner. Invert a clay flower pot over the flask. Bake the invested flask about one hour; baking eliminates the wax pattern and leaves the mold in the investment.
- Removing*  
*the*  
*investment*
- Remove the flask from the screen with the iron tongs.
- File the top of the investment even with the top of the flask, if necessary.
- Reaming*  
*the*  
*sprue*  
*hole*
- Ream out the sprue hole about twice its size.
- Hold the flask with the sprue hole down during this operation to keep the investment out of the mold.
- Heating*  
*the*  
*sprue Hole*  
*with the*  
*torch*
- Turn the flame of the torch into the sprue hole until the investment becomes red hot.
- Placing*  
*the*  
*flask*  
*in the*  
*machine*
- Place the flask in the machine as described above. The ring mold should be in the position as shown in Fig. 19.



## PROCESSES

## CASTING

*Winding  
the  
Spring  
Locking  
the  
Carrier*

Turn the arm of the carrier four times to wind the spring; this is the rule for general casting—if turned too many times the metal will spill or be thrown out of the crucible.

Push up the stop pin to lock the carrier as shown in Fig. 14.

*Heating  
the  
Metal*

Heat the metal with the blow torch.

Hold the blow torch so the flame is perpendicular to the metal; in this position the torch will not have to be changed when the metal melts into the bottom of the crucible.

Direct on the metal the part of the flame which lies just above the point of the cone; this part of the flame is hottest.

A steady heat is required until the metal has become fluid.

Lift the flame a little.

Sprinkle prepared reducing flux or borax powder on the metal to keep it from oxidizing. Take hold of the cross bar at the counterpoise and shake to determine if the metal is in a fluid state.

Hold firmly as the stop pin has been automatically released.

*Casting  
the  
Pattern*

Release the cross bar when the metal reaches the fluid state; the arm spins and throws the molten metal from the crucible into the mold.

## PROCESSES

## COOLING THE CASTING IN THE MOLD

*Removing  
the  
Flask  
from the  
Machine*

Remove the flask from the machine with the tongs.

*Cooling  
the  
Casting*

Pour a small amount of water into a deep pan. Hold the flask so that the investment touches the water a moment.

Remove from the water.

Repeat several times.

Stand the flask in the pan of water. Cover the flask slowly with water.

## REMOVING THE CASTING

*Removing  
the  
investment  
from the  
flask*

Remove the investment from the flask with a knife.

*Washing  
the  
casting*

Wash the investment from the casting with water and a stiff brush.

## PROCESSES

## FINISHING

<i>Pickling</i> p. 22	Clean in pickle.
<i>Sawing off the Excess Metal from the Casting</i>	Remove any excess metal attached to the casting with the jeweler's saw blade.
<i>Filing</i> p. 25	File the casting to remove any roughness if necessary.
<i>Carving</i> p. 87	Sharpen or carve any lines necessary with the gravers.
<i>Polishing</i> p. 71	Polish the surface.

## QUESTIONS

1. *In what form can the wax be purchased?*

The wax can be purchased in several forms—in sheets of various gauges, in wire, half round, and round of various gauges, and in stick form.

2. *Is it possible to make undercuts on the wax pattern?*

Undercuts do not affect this type of casting because the pattern is melted out of the mold.

3. *Why is the wax bead placed on the sprue pin?*

To prevent porosity which develops when the casting fails to cool and freeze at the same rate. The molten metal in the reservoir may be drawn into the casting to fill any voids. Often the porosity will be found in the reservoir.

4. *Why should extra metal be added to the amount required for casting?*

This extra amount of metal takes care of the reservoir and extra wax on the sprue pin. It is better to have too much metal than too little. Any extra metal can be used again.

5. *What investment is used?*

Dental casting investment.

6. *What container should be used for mixing the investment?*

A rubber dish or half a rubber ball.

7. *Can an investment be made thinner if it has become thick during the investing process?*

Adding water after the investment has started to set makes the investment granular and spoils it for casting purposes.

8. *Are there other ways of heating the invested flask?*

A dental inlay furnace may be used but it is expensive for the individual craftsman.

9. *Why should care be taken in cooling the casting?*

The casting cooled too quickly may fracture.

---

---

## CLEANING, POLISHING, AND COLORING

---

Cleaning, polishing, and coloring play a distinct part in the creation of a piece of jewelry. Cleaning is the basis of a good finish since no amount of coloring or polishing will cover up or remove scratches or excess solder. Coloring darkens the metal and takes away the harsh metallic look of the polished metal. Polishing creates highlights and gradations of tone and gives depth to the recessed parts.

### CLEANING

Cleaning removes the fire coat, excess solder, scratches, and oil, and prepares the article for final polishing and coloring. Since the success of these two processes is dependent upon the thoroughness of the cleaning, care should be taken to have every part free of dirt and blemish.

<i>Tools</i>	Pickle of sulphuric acid for silver, gold, or
<i>and</i>	copper
<i>Working</i>	Pickle of nitric acid for gold
<i>Materials</i>	Copper pickle pan for sulphuric acid
	Porcelain pan for nitric acid
	Copper tongs
	File or scraper
	Scotch stone
	Fine pumice powder and oil

### PROCESSES

<i>Pickling</i>	Clean the metal in pickle.
p. 22	Remove the metal from the pickle with copper tongs.
<i>Washing</i>	Wash thoroughly in cold water.

## PROCESSES

*Removing  
Scratches  
and  
Excess  
Solder*

Remove the deep scratches or excess solder from the surface of the metal with a file or scraper. File in the direction of the length of the scratch until the depth of the scratch has been reached. Rub the scotch stone over the metal in a circular movement; the scotch stone must be kept wet during this operation.

Repeat until all the file and scraper scratches have been removed.

Wipe the surface of the metal several times during the stoning to see that the surface is kept even.

*Cleaning  
Small  
Recessed  
Parts*

Clean the surface of all small recessed parts with a piece of hard wood dipped in oil and pumice powder.

## POLISHING

Polishing the metal with buffs charged with tripoli removes fine scratches and uneven surfaces. Rouge applied to a cloth or chamois buffing wheel gives a high polish to metal but does not remove blemishes. Buffs charged with rouge give the metal lustre and a foundation for coloring and for the final buffing after the color has been applied. Care must be taken to keep the metal moving on the buffing wheel as tripoli applied to a buff with a hard surface wears away the metal.

*Tools  
and  
Working  
Materials*

Polishing motor  
Felt or bristle buffing wheel  
Tripoli cake  
Soda, ammonia, and water solution  
Granite pan  
Soft cloth or chamois buffing wheel  
Rouge stick  
Gas plate

## PROCESSES

*Buffing*

Place the buffing wheel on the spindle of the polishing motor.

Charge the felt buffing wheel with tripoli for flat surfaces. The bristle buffing wheel and tripoli are used for the recessed parts.

Buff the metal until it is free from surface marks.

*Washing*

Wash in strong hot solution of soda, ammonia, and water.

Remove and scrub with soap and a stiff brush if there are recessed parts.

*Polishing*

Place the chamois or cloth buffing wheel on the spindle of the polishing motor.

Apply rouge stick to the buffing wheel.

Buff the surface of the metal to a high polish.

*Washing*

Wash in a strong hot solution of soda, ammonia and water. Rinse.

## COLORING

Coloring softens the tone of the metal and takes away the harsh metallic look of the polished metal. Silver is generally colored even if most of the coloring is buffed off. Gold is often just buffed but if there are recessed parts it is best to use color to give depth.

*Tools*

Potassium sulphide solution for silver

*and*

Ammonium sulphide solution

*Working*

Gas plate

*Materials*

Double boiler

Small hair brush

Soft cloth

Whiting

Cloth or chamois buffing wheel

## PROCESSES

## PREPARATION FOR COLORING

*Preparing  
Potassium  
Sulphide  
Solution  
and  
Ammonium  
Sulphide  
Solution*

Crush about one ounce of potassium sulphide in one quart of hot water.

Make a straw colored solution of ammonium sulphide and water. Heat the solution.

## COLORING SILVER

*Coloring  
Silver*

*Method 1.* Dip the silver in the warm solution of potassium sulphide or paint the solution on the silver until it becomes a blue black.

*Method 2.* Paint the silver with a warm solution of ammonium sulphide until it becomes a brown grey.

*Washing*

Wash in water.

Warm the silver dry or rub with a soft cloth.

*Removing  
Surplus  
Color*

Dip the thumb or finger in whiting.

Rub the surface of the metal to remove the oxidation; the amount to be removed depends upon the size of the piece, the design, and the stone to be set.

Polish with a cloth or chamois buffing wheel.

## COLORING GOLD

*Heating  
the  
Gold*

Heat the gold until it is hot.



PROCESSES	Apply the warm ammonium sulphide solution
<i>Coloring</i>	to the hot gold with a soft hair brush.
<i>the</i>	Go over the surface several times if necessary
<i>Gold</i>	to obtain the desired color.
	Wash in water.
	Polish with a cloth or chamois buffing wheel.

### QUESTIONS

1. *Why is silver a dull grey after heating?*  
Sterling silver has a copper alloy which oxidizes when heated.
2. *What makes the silver white after it has been pickled?*  
Pickle dissolves the copper oxides, leaving a film of pure silver over the surface.
3. *How can black spots be removed from silver?*  
Dip the piece in a solution of half nitric acid and half water; care must be taken not to leave the metal too long in the solution as it will eat into the metal.
4. *Can buffing be done without use of a polishing motor?*  
Buffing may be done by hand—using a hand buffer.
5. *Why does potassium sulphide solution sometimes turn an iridescent color on the silver instead of turning black?*  
It may be the silver has not remained in the solution long enough or the solution may be too weak.
6. *Why does potassium sulphide sometimes scale from the metal when it is dry?*  
The solution is too strong.

## II. DECORATIVE PROCESSES

Chasing, Repoussé, and Modeling  
Carving

Wire Working

Wire Drawing

Tube Drawing

Wire Twisting

Round Twist

Vine or Chevron Twist

Incised Twist

Flat and Open Twist

Waved Wire Smooth and Flat

Waved Wire Broken and Flat

Wire Coiling

Coil of Round Rings

Coil of Oval Rings

Coiled Wire Cone

Coiled Band of Overlapping Rings

Coiled Wire Knob

Round Rings of Wire

Oval Rings of Wire

Flat Coil of Wire

Coiled Wire Unit

Domes, Balls, and Stamped Forms

Enameling

Champlevé Enamel

Cloisonné Enamel

Bassetaille Enamel

Limoges or Painted Enamel

Plique à Jour Enamel

Foils

Stone Setting

Round Bezel and Bearing

Square Mitered Bezel and Bearing

Claw or Crown Bezel and Bearing

Paved or Gypsy Setting

---

# DECORATIVE PROCESSES

---



*Fig. 20.—Chasing and Repoussé. The metal in a pitch bowl, chasing tool, and hammer in position*

---

CHASING, REPOUSSÉ, AND MODELING

---

Chasing is beating a line in metal *from the front* with chasing tools and a chasing hammer. Chasing tools are much like dull chisels with rounded ends. The chasing hammer is a light, flat-faced hammer with a slender handle pear-shaped at the end that fits the hand. These tools, like many others used for jewelry and metal work, come in a number of sizes and weights.

Chasing is done on thin sheet metal or heavy metal or as a finish on castings. The metal in which the design is to be chased must be held in pitch which, when warmed and then cooled, holds the metal firmly. When comparatively little chasing is to be done, the piece may be placed on a lead or wood surface and held in position by the pressure of the tool.

Repoussé is beating the metal *from the back* with steel repoussé tools known as bossing and cushion tools. These tools are made with rounded edges and with working ends more rounded in shape than the ends of the chasing tools. A flat-faced hammer from four to six ounces in weight is used with repoussé tools depending upon the gauge of metal that is being raised.

The modeling or surface tooling for high and low relief is done *from the front* after the design has been raised. Low relief may also be obtained by beating down the background *from the front* with a modeler or grounders. Modeling tools are flat and smooth at the working end. Modeled parts are often combined with stones, enamels, and piercing to create interesting surfaces.

Chasing, repoussé, and modeling are a means of decoration rather than construction. Because the beauty of the metal surface should be evident, the work should be simple and direct. Overworked surfaces appear mechanical and confuse or spoil the design. Undercuts made with chasing tools are sometimes used to emphasize a portion of the design.

<i>Tools</i>	Metal gauge
<i>and</i>	Gas and air blow torch
<i>Working</i>	Charcoal block
<i>Materials</i>	Copper tongs
	Pickle
	Copper pickle pan
	Gas plate
	Tracing paper
	White beeswax
	Scratch awl
	Vaseline or oil
	Pitch bowl or block
	Prepared pitch
	Pliers
	Chasing and repoussé tools
	Chasing hammer
	Medium emery cloth or pumice powder

## PREPARATION FOR CHASING AND REPOUSSÉ

### PROCESSES

*Gauging the Metal*      Gauge the sheet metal, 24- or 26-gauge.

*Annealing*      Anneal the metal to be worked.  
p. 18

*Pickling*      Clean in pickle.  
p. 22

*Transferring the Design*      Transfer the design to the metal.  
pp. 33, 36, 37      *Note:* This may be done before or after the metal is in the pitch, depending upon the method of transfer selected.

## PROCESSES

*Oiling**be**Metal*

Warm the metal.

Rub a little vaseline on the surface of the metal which is to come in direct contact with the pitch.

*Warming**be**Pitch**and**Metal*

Warm the surface of the pitch with a soft loose flame until it becomes plastic; if heated too quickly or if the flame is too hot, it burns and becomes brittle and loses its adhesiveness.

Warm the metal.

*Placing**be**Metal**on the**Pitch*

Place the metal with the oiled side on the pitch. Press the metal to be worked into the warm pitch.

Rub vaseline on the finger tips.

Bring a small amount of pitch over the edge of the metal to hold it more firmly.

Let both metal and pitch cool before working.

*The**Position**of the**Worker*

The position of the worker for chasing and repoussé: Sit directly in front and sufficiently above the work to look down upon it; hold the elbow up.

Hold the chasing or other tools in the left hand as shown in Fig. 20.

Place the tool on the line to be traced.

 *Holding**be**Chasing**tool*

Tip the tool back slightly from the direction it is to move; for small curves tip the tool back at a greater angle.

Place the first three fingers on the side of the tool farthest from the worker.

Rest the cushion of the third finger on the metal.

Hold the fourth finger out from the third finger; sometimes this finger rests on the metal beside the third finger.

## PROCESSES

Place the thumb on the side of the tool nearest the worker. This position assures tool control.

*Holding  
the  
Hammer*

Hold the rounded pear-shaped end of the hammer in the palm of the hand; place the first finger on the top of the handle, the thumb on the side, and curve the other three fingers around the thick end with the tips pointing toward the worker.

## CHASING

*Chasing*

Use a thin tracing tool for outlining.

Strike the tracing tool with the hammer with even, steady, and rapid strokes directly on the end with a wrist movement. As the tool moves toward the worker with each blow of the hammer, a thin, smooth grooved line should be left on the surface of the metal.

Repeat the blows, keeping the eye on the line of the design and not on the end of the tool.

Go over the line again to make smoother or deeper if necessary.

Use a wider tracing tool if a broader line is desired.

*Removing  
the  
Metal  
from the  
Pitch*

Warm the metal and the pitch with the loose flame of the blow torch.

Remove the metal from the pitch with pliers.

*Cleaning  
the  
Pitch  
from the  
Metal*

Remove, while still warm, any pitch which remains on the metal by wiping with a kerosene cloth or brush it off with melted paraffin.

Remove burned pitch by annealing the metal while still hot and plunging it into water. This

## PROCESSES

may have to be repeated several times before all the pitch has been removed.

*Pickling*

Clean the metal in pickle.

## REPOUSSÉ

*Polishing  
the  
Reverse  
Side*

Rub the raised lines on the reverse side with emery cloth or pumice powder to make the outline of the design stand out.

*Oiling  
the  
Metal*

Warm the metal and oil the side that has been worked.

*Warming  
the  
Pitch  
and  
Metal*

Warm the pitch and metal as described above.

*Placing  
the  
Metal  
in the  
Pitch*

Place the metal on the pitch with the raised lines of the design up.

Press the metal into the pitch as described above.

*Holding  
the  
Repoussé  
Tool*

These tools are held like the chasing tools but not at an angle.

*Repoussé*

Beat back between the chased lines of the design with a repoussé tool.

*Removing  
the  
Metal  
from the  
Pitch*

Remove the metal from the pitch as described above.



PROCESSES	Clean any pitch from the surface of the metal as described above.
<i>Cleaning the Pitch from the Metal</i>	
<i>Annealing</i>	Anneal the metal.
<i>Pickling</i>	Clean the metal in pickle.

## MODELING

<i>Oiling</i>	Warm and oil the side of the metal that has just been worked.
<i>Placing the Metal on the Pitch</i>	Place the metal on the pitch with the side up that was first worked. Press the metal into the warm pitch as described above. Tap the surface of the metal; any hollow sound will indicate the pitch does not come in contact with the metal. Heat the metal over these spots. Press the metal further into the pitch.
<i>Holding the Modeling Tool</i>	Hold the tool like a repoussé tool.
<i>Modeling</i>	Model the design by hammering the modeling tools on the raised parts of the metal to get the contours and the planes desired.

## QUESTIONS

1. *Can fine silver be used?*

Fine silver can be used; it is softer but easier to model; if the piece is large it can be backed with sterling silver to give it strength.

2. *What is pitch prepared with to make it less brittle and more adhesive?*

Plaster of Paris and tallow are mixed with melted pitch.

3. *What is used to hold the prepared pitch?*

There are several methods of holding the pitch. A chaser's bowl or, for smaller work, a chaser's block.

4. *How is the chaser's bowl held steady while working?*

The chaser's bowl is held on a padded leather holder filled with sand, or a collar made of heavy leather belting riveted together, or a coil of rope bound together with leather. The bowl set in this may be moved at any angle.

5. *How is the pitch block held?*

The pitch block is held in the jaws of a table vise or in an engraver's ball.

6. *Why is prepared pitch the best material to beat against?*

Prepared pitch is adhesive, also it supports the metal satisfactorily while being worked, and though firm it is sufficiently plastic to produce a design in relief and of good texture.

7. *What other materials can be used to beat against?*

For low relief, hardwood closely grained, a lead block, or thick cork linoleum.

8. *If the metal has been raised in high relief, how should the metal be placed on the pitch to be modeled?*

Rub vaseline in the hollow places which have been raised in the metal and pour in melted pitch; when cool rub the same side of the metal with vaseline and place on the pitch. Warm both metal and pitch and press the metal into the pitch.

9. *Why is the handle of the repoussé hammer slender near the head of the hammer and thick and pear-shaped on the holding end?*

The thinness of the handle near the head gives a spring to each blow of the hammer and more rapid hammering is possible.

10. *If a tracing tool is held perpendicular will it move when the end is struck with the hammer?*

The tool held in this position when struck with the hammer will not move.

11. *If a tracing tool is held at too great an angle will it run when struck?*

If the angle at which the tool is held is too great, when struck with the hammer the tool will slip over the surface of the metal, leaving only a scratch or irregular indentations.

12. *If the blows of the hammer are uneven does this affect the work?*

The tool will leave an uneven groove in the metal when blows are uneven.

---



*Fig. 21.—Carving. The metal held on a shellac stick, the graver in position*

---

CARVING

---

Carving is cutting away metal from the surface. The forms of carving are line and low or bas relief. Fine lines are used to delineate a design as veins in a leaf and to create a design on the surface. Low relief is cutting away metal which forms the background of the design. When the design is in mass the outline of the whole is cut first and detail second. If intricate carving is to be done, the design should be made in wax or clay before cutting.

Carving tools called gravers are steel tools mounted in wooden handles. The shapes most commonly used are flat, round, and point or onglette. These tools have to be conditioned frequently as work progresses. The working end of the graver must be kept sharp and a forty-five degree angle must be maintained in order to use the tool correctly in the carving process. Because tool conditioning and carving have to be alternated frequently, the care of the tool is, in a sense, as much a part of the carving as the actual cutting of the metal.

The piece to be carved is held on a shellac stick by means of yellow flake shellac melted to form a smooth surface on the end of the stick. The metal is warmed and pressed into the shellac and allowed to cool. This holds the piece firmly.

Carving in most instances is decoration, though it is sometimes used to cut away metal on the inside of bezels and similar bits of construction.

<i>tools</i>	Oil stone
<i>aid</i>	Light oil
<i>working</i>	Gravers
<i>materials</i>	Kerosene cloth
	Yellow flake shellac
	Mounting stick

<i>Tools</i>	Gas and air blow torch
<i>and</i>	Steel surface plate
<i>Working</i>	Charcoal block
<i>Materials</i>	Pickle
	Copper pickle pan
	Copper tongs
	Gas plate
	Polishing motor
	Felt or bristle buffing wheel
	Tripoli cake
	Soda, ammonia, water solution
	Granite pan
	Thin tracing paper
	White beeswax
	Scratch awl
	Bench pin
	Ink eraser
	Alcohol
	Scotch stone
	Riffle file

## PREPARATION FOR CARVING

### THE TOOL

#### PROCESSES

<i>Placing and Oiling the Stone</i>	Place a hard Arkansas oil stone on the bench, the side parallel to the edge of the bench. Apply a few drops of light oil to the surface of the stone.
<i>Holding the Tool While Sharpening</i>	Hold the graver in the right hand. Steady the graver with the thumb and fingers. Place the blade so that it rests at a forty-five degree angle on the oil stone.

## PROCESSES

*Sharpening**be**Tool**Blade*

Keep the wrist rigid.

Bend the elbow.

Move the arm from the shoulder.

Run the blade the full length of the stone.

Press the tool on the stone during the forward stroke.

Remove the pressure on the return stroke.

Continue until all the scratches left from the grinding have been removed and the tool is true with a polished tip.

The tools will have to be sharpened at intervals during the carving process as the cutting edge wears away.

*Removing**be**burr*

Jab the tool in wood to remove the burr.

Wipe the tool with a kerosene cloth; it makes the tool run more easily.

## THE SHELLAC STICK

*Melting**nd**Moulding**be**shellac*

Melt a small amount of yellow flake shellac on a mounting stick using the direct flame of the blow torch. If heated too much the shellac burns and becomes like rubber and loses its adhesive quality.

Knead on a flat steel surface while soft.

Warm again and add more shellac to the stick.

Heat and knead as above.

Continue this process until the surface of the stick is covered well enough with well-blended shellac to hold the article to be carved.

Leave a flat surface if the base of the article to be carved is flat.

Build up the shellac while still warm if the piece to be carved is convex.

## PROCESSES

Allow to cool.

The same shellac can be used about six times, then chipped off and fresh shellac applied as described above.

## THE METAL TO BE CARVED

*Annealing*

p. 18

Anneal the metal.

*Pickling*

p. 22

Pickle the metal.

*Polishing*

p. 71

Buff the surface with felt or bristle buffing wheel charged with tripoli.

Wash in a hot solution of soda, ammonia, and water.

*Transferring  
the*

Transfer the design to the metal. Use the wax method.

*Design  
to the*

Scratch the design in the metal.

*Metal*

Remove the wax.

p. 33

*Note:* Other methods of transferring may be used (See pp. 36, 37). If the article is to be executed in repoussé and carved or pierced and carved, the work should proceed in the order given.

*Holding  
the*

Warm the article. Care must be taken not to get the article too hot or the shellac will melt and run over the surface of the metal to be carved.

*Article  
in the  
Shellac*

Place the article, while still warm, level on the shellac stick.

Press into the shellac.

Push the soft shellac around the article. When cool the shellac hardens and holds the article firmly.



THE POSITION OF TOOLS AND  
MATERIAL TO BE CARVED

## PROCESSES

*Holding  
the  
Shellac  
Stick*

The position of the shellac stick and the graver should be as follows: (Fig. 21)

Grasp the handle of the shellac stick in the left hand.

Hold firmly in the V of the bench pin; the hand holding the handle should be under the bench pin.

*Holding  
the  
Graver*

Hold the graver in the right hand; an onglette or small slightly rounded graver should be used for the initial line.

Place the handle of the graver on the joints of the second and third fingers.

Hold the part of the blade nearest the handle in the second joint of the first finger.

Close the hand.

Place the thumb with the side of the ball on the work to be carved.

Place the graver at about a fifteen degree angle on the piece to be carved; irregularities will appear in the carved line if the tool is held at too great an angle.

Support the side of the blade on the ball of the thumb; this position serves to steady and guide the tool during the carving.

## CARVING

*Carving*

Push the graver with a forward movement of the hand without changing the position of the thumb.

## PROCESSES

*Carving*

Move the graver firmly and evenly. Remove only a small layer of metal at a time; the lines and surfaces may be gone over several times to get the desired depth or width.

Rub the carved line during the carving with an ink eraser to make the carved line or surface stand out more clearly.

Remove any deep scratches with a scotch stone.

Outline the design with an onglette graver.

Cut against this line to remove the background with a flat graver; when the tool reaches this line the metal should chip off, leaving a crisp line.

Deepen the outline.

Cut away more of the background as before.

Repeat the above until the desired depth has been reached and the design stands out in relief.

*Removing  
the  
Article  
from the  
Shellac  
Stick*

Warm the metal and shellac slightly and remove the article; sometimes the piece can be pried off without heating.

Soak the article in alcohol if any shellac remains on the surface of the metal.

## FINISHING

*Removing  
the  
Tool  
Marks  
p. 71*

Remove the marks of the graver from the background with a ruffle file; when tool marks add to the design they should be left.

Rub the surface of the metal with a scotch stone to remove the marks of the file. Dip the scotch stone in water during this operation.

*Buffing*

Buff lightly with tripoli and bristle buffing wheel.

## QUESTIONS

1. *What gauge metal is used for the article to be carved?*

The gauge depends upon the design of the article and the type of carving to be executed; 18-gauge and heavier should be used for bas relief.

2. *Is the design always put on the article before the article is placed on the shellac stick?*

This depends upon the article to be carved and the method of transferring selected.

3. *When placing the article on the shellac stick why is the metal warmed instead of the shellac?*

The article holds to the shellac better if the metal is warmed.

4. *Is the article to be carved always held in the shellac stick?*

Other tools can be used to hold the article during the carving; the form and the size of the article suggests the tool to be used to hold the article firmly, such as a ring clamp to hold a ring.

5. *Is the shellac stick or the tool holding the article turned during the carving?*

In carving scrolls or curved lines, sometimes both tools are turned and the metal is moved against the carving tool.

6. *What is the initial step in carving masses?*

The masses should be blocked out first.

7. *Should a design in relief be modeled first in wax or clay?*

The design should first be modeled in wax, if there is much detail.

8. *Are the tool marks filed and stoned from the surface to give a smooth texture?*

Sometimes the tool marks are removed entirely from the surface, often some are left to give varying texture and color.

9. *How is a sharp perpendicular cut made?*

Make the outline and remove a thin layer of metal by cutting against this line. Repeat until the desired depth has been reached.



*Fig. 22.—Drawing the wire through the holes in the draw plate with draw tongs*

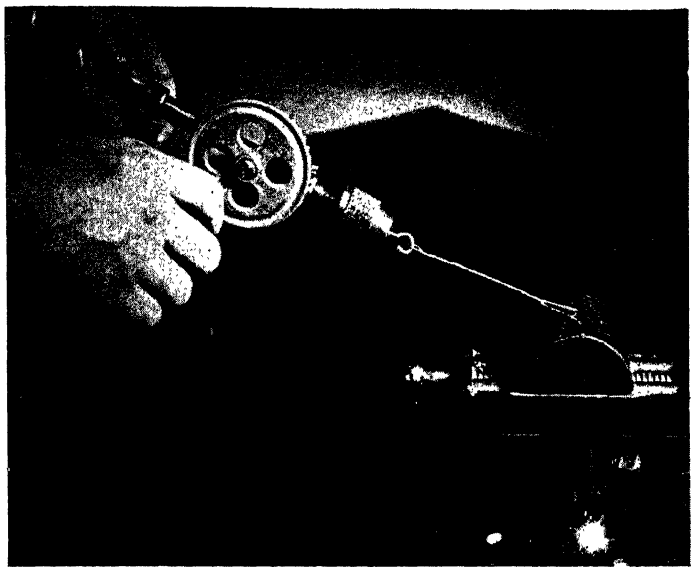
---

## WIRE WORKING

---

The construction of a piece of jewelry often requires wires of various sizes and shapes. The design may also call for twisted or coiled wire to produce a broken line or to give delicacy to an edge. Ornaments for decoration such as coiled motifs, which vary the design and texture, may also be made of smooth or twisted wire. The use of the draw plates as described below makes it possible to reshape these wires into forms that add to the interest of the design.

Wires may form the foundation of a piece of jewelry such as a chain, a ring, or a bracelet, but the greatest use of wire forms and shapes is made in applied decoration. There is practically no limit to the ways wire can be used for this purpose.



*Fig. 23.—Twisting the wire with a hand drill*  
*Fig. 24.—Twisting the wire with a spool and rod*

## WIRE DRAWING

Wire drawing is drawing wire through tapered and graduated holes in a steel draw plate to reduce it in size. The shape of the wire may also be changed, if desired. Some of the draw plates are made with round holes graduated and tapered; others have oval, half round, triangular, square or oblong holes.

<i>Tools</i>	Charcoal block or asbestos pad
<i>and</i>	Gas and air blow torch
<i>Working</i>	Pickle
<i>Materials</i>	Copper pickle pan
	Copper tongs
	Gas plate
	File or emery wheel
	File brush
	Polishing motor
	Steel hammer
	Steel surface plate
	Table fastened to wall or floor
	Bench vise or draw bench
	Round hole draw plate
	Yellow beeswax
	Draw tongs

## PROCESSES

## PREPARATION FOR WIRE DRAWING

*Annealing*

p. 18

Anneal the wire to be drawn; when the wire is soft it is easier to draw.

*Filing*

p. 25

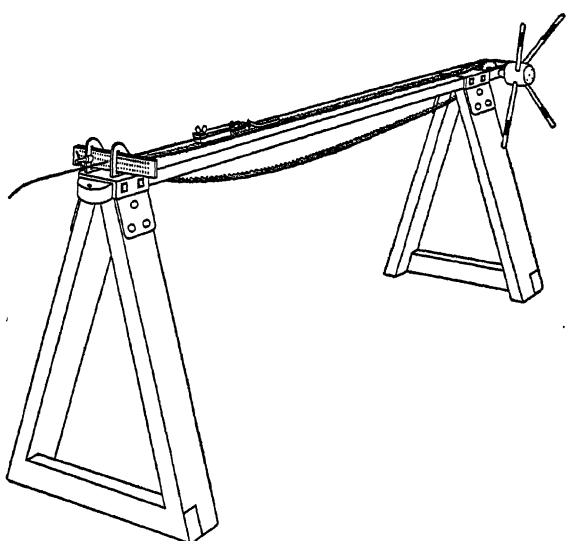
File the end of the annealed wire to a blunt taper with a file or emery wheel placed on the polishing motor.

*Hammering*

Wire of heavy gauge may be hammered to a blunt taper and filed if necessary.

PROCESSES  
*Placing the  
 Draw  
 Plate  
 in the  
 Vise*

Hold the draw plate horizontally in the jaws of the bench vise, the tapered end of the hole toward the worker as shown in Fig. 22; a draw bench may also be used as shown in Fig. 25.



*Fig. 25.—Draw bench to draw wire of heavy gauge*

*Waxing*

Rub the length of the wire lightly with yellow beeswax.

Coil and bind wire of light gauge as shown in Fig. 4.

Dip in melted yellow beeswax.

*Inserting  
 the  
 Wire  
 in the  
 Draw  
 Plate*

Insert the tapered end of the wire through a hole in the draw plate as near the diameter of the wire as possible.

Let the wire extend through the hole about  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch or more.

PROCESSES  
*Holding the  
 Draw  
 Tongs*

Hold the draw tongs with the loop of the handle down as shown in Fig. 22.

## DRAWING THE WIRE

*Drawing*

Grasp the point of wire which extends through the hole firmly with the draw tongs.

Draw the wire through the hole; the wire must come through the hole to the worker in a straight line; if drawn at an angle the edge of the hole in the draw plate will make nicks in the wire.

Continue to draw the wire through successive holes until it is the desired size.

Change the shape of the wire by drawing through holes of the desired shape.

*Annealing*

Anneal the wire after it has been drawn through five or six holes as the drawing has made the wire hard and brittle.

Anneal the length of the wire to straighten.

*Stretching  
 to*

Place one end of the wire in the jaws of the vise. Hold the other end with the pliers.

*Straighten  
 Lengths  
 of  
 Wire*

Pull the length gently.

Rub the wire over the edge of a bench pin.

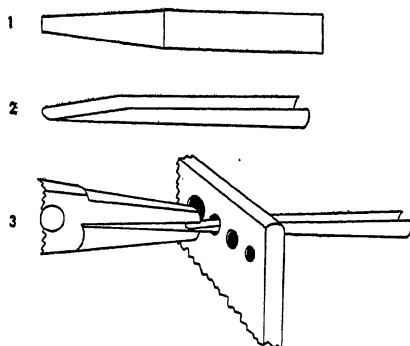
## TUBE DRAWING

Tubes can be made from strips of sheet metal which are drawn through holes in a steel draw plate to form the desired size and shape.



*Tools  
and  
Working  
Materials*

File  
Ruler  
Dividers



*Fig. 26.—Drawing a strip of metal to form a tube*

Jeweler's shears

Charcoal or asbestos block

Gas and air blow torch

Pickle

• Copper pickle pan

Copper tongs

Gas plate

Block of hardwood with semicircular groove

Raising hammer with thin neck or chasing tool

Yellow beeswax

Bench vise

Draw plate

Burnisher or knife

Draw tongs

Flux

Borax slate

Solder

Small camel's hair brush

## PROCESSES

## PREPARATION FOR TUBE DRAWING

*Filing*

File the edge of the metal a little longer than the desired length of the finished tube.

*Laying  
out the  
Strip*

Hold one arm of the dividers against the trued edge of the metal.

Scratch, with the other arm of the dividers, a line on the metal parallel with the filed edge; the width of the strip should be three and one-half (plus the gauge of the metal) times the diameter of the desired tube.

*Cutting*

Cut the metal with the shears along the scratched line.

Cut the end to a  $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch blunt taper as shown in (1) Fig. 26.

*Truing*

File the edges true; the edges must be parallel.

*Annealing*

Anneal the strip.

*Pickling*

Clean in pickle.

*Dapping*

Place the block of wood in the jaws of the table vise.

Place the strip of metal evenly in the groove.

Tap the metal in the groove.

Round the edges slightly as shown in (2) Fig. 26.

*Annealing*

Anneal the strip.

*Waxing*

Rub both sides of the strip with beeswax.

*Placing  
the*

Place the draw plate horizontally in the jaws of the table vise with the tapered holes toward the worker.

*Draw  
Plate  
in the  
Vise*

## PROCESSES

*Inserting  
the  
Tapered  
End  
in the  
Draw  
Plate*

Place the tapered tip through the hole in the draw plate that it most nearly fits as shown in (3) Fig. 26.

## DRAWING THE TUBE

*Drawing*  
p. 98

Draw the strip through the hole in the draw plate as if it were wire.

Continue drawing through successive holes until the edges meet.

*Note:* Insert a knife blade or burnisher firmly in the opening of the strip before it passes through the hole in the plate; this keeps the strip from twisting as it is being drawn.

*Cleaning  
the  
Joint*

Rub the length of the joint with a file or emery cloth.

*Soldering*  
p. 38

Solder the joint. Be sure the solder has melted the entire length.

*Note:* If the tube is to be made into a hinge, the joint is not soldered until it is mounted on the article to be hinged.

## WIRE TWISTING

Smooth wire is often twisted to change the texture and is used for decorative rather than for structural value. Its broken line gives a decided light and dark pattern and sometimes a feeling of delicacy as well.

## ROUND TWIST



Fig. 27.—Two round wires twisted together

<i>Tools</i>	Charcoal block or asbestos pad
<i>and</i>	Gas and air blow torch
<i>Working</i>	Pickle
<i>Materials</i>	Copper pickle pan
	Copper tongs
	Gas plate
	Bench vise
	Hook of iron or steel
	Hand drill
	Spool or hand vise for heavy wire
	Flat-face steel hammer
	Steel surface plate
	File
	Draw plate
	Wax
	Draw tongs
	Snub nose pliers
	Rolling mill

## PROCESSES

<i>Annealing</i> p. 18	Anneal the wire thoroughly.
<i>Looping</i>	Make a loop in the center of the wires to be twisted by bringing two ends together.
<i>Placing</i>	Hold the two loose ends in the jaws of the bench vise with the wires in a horizontal position.

## PROCESSES

*Inserting*

Insert a hook in the chuck of the drill.

*Holding*

Catch the looped end of the wire in the hook which has been placed in the chuck of the hand drill as shown in Fig. 23.

Hold the wire taut and parallel to the floor.

*Note:* A spool and nail may be substituted for the hand drill and hook. (Fig. 24.)

For heavy wire a hand vise is used in place of the hook to hold and twist the wire; twist the wire by turning the hand vise.

## TWISTING THE WIRE

*Twisting*

Turn the handle of the drill forward. This should give an even right-hand twist to the wire as shown in Fig. 27. (See Question 4.)

## VINE OR CHEVRON TWIST

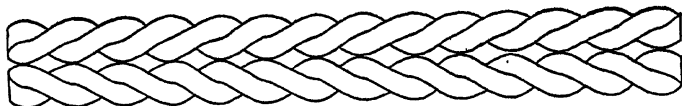


Fig. 28.—Two pairs of round wires, right- and left-hand twists

*Measuring*

Measure and cut two pieces of annealed wire equal in length.

*Twisting*  
p. 101

Two steps are required to make this design.

1. Loop one piece of wire and make a *right-hand twist* as described above. Count the number of full turns.
2. Loop the second piece of wire and make a *left-hand twist*, this time by turning the handle of the drill backward toward the

## PROCESSES

worker. Give the same number of full turns to the wheel as executed in step 1. place the two wires together as shown in Fig. 28.

## INCISED TWIST



*Fig. 29.—Twisted wire drawn through holes in the draw plate*

*Twisting*

p. 101

Twist two annealed wires together. A tight twist is more effective than a loose twist.

*Hammering*

p. 96

Hammer the looped ends of the wire together on the steel plate with the steel hammer.

*Filing*

p. 25

File this end to a point.

*Annealing*

p. 18

Anneal the wire thus twisted.

*Drawing*

p. 96

Draw the wire through holes in the draw plate. The twist flattens out after it has been drawn through a few graduated holes. The drawing should be continued until the desired flattened spiral effect is obtained.

## FLAT AND OPEN TWIST



*Fig. 30.—Twisted wire rolled*

*Twisting*

p. 101

Twist two annealed wires together; a loose twist is necessary to assure holes at intervals between flattened wires.

## DECORATIVE PROCESSES



### PROCESSES

#### *Flattening*

Roll the wires thus twisted through a rolling mill (the holes will disappear if the wire is rolled too flat) or place the wire on a steel surface plate and flatten with a planishing hammer.

### WAVED WIRE SMOOTH AND FLAT



*Fig. 31.—Twisted wire separated and rolled*

#### *Twisting*

p. 101

Twist two annealed wires together. A tight twist is necessary to get a good waved line.

#### *Annealing*

p. 18

Anneal the wire.

#### *Separating*

Separate the wires by placing one wire in the table vise.

Hold the other wire with pliers.

Unwind the two wires without destroying the twist.

#### *Flattening*

Roll the separated wires in the rolling mill. The result should be a flat ribbon wave.

### WAVED WIRE BROKEN AND FLAT



*Fig. 32.—Twisted wire rolled and separated*

#### *Twisting*

p. 101

Twist two annealed wires together. A tight twist is necessary.

#### *Flattening*

Roll the wires thus twisted in a rolling mill.

#### *Annealing*

p. 18

Anneal the wire.

PROCESSES	Separate the two wires as described above. The
<i>Separating the</i>	result should be a flat waved ribbon with slight
<i>Wires</i>	depressions at regular intervals.

### WIRE COILING

Wire coiling is winding wire around a steel mandrel which may be any size or shape. Smooth or twisted wire may be coiled and used for decorative bands or motifs. Coils as shown in Fig. 35 sawed into rings are used in the construction of a chain and often form the foundation as well as the decoration of an article as shown in Figs. 69, 94.

<i>Tools</i>	Charcoal block or asbestos pad
<i>and</i>	Gas and air blow torch
<i>Working</i>	Pickle
<i>Materials</i>	Copper pickle pan
	Copper tongs
	Gas plate
	Steel hammer
	Steel surface plate
	Boards (Fig. 33)
	Bench vise
	C-clamp
	Round split mandrel (Fig. 34)
	Hand drill or jeweler's hand vise
	Flat mandrel
	File
	File brush
	Emery cloth #1
	Soft wrapping paper
	Shears
	Binding wire 28-gauge
	Pointed mandrel
	Bench pin



<i>Tools</i>	Jeweler's saw frame
<i>and</i>	Jeweler's saw blade #1/0
<i>Working</i>	Flux
<i>Materials</i>	Borax slate or saucer

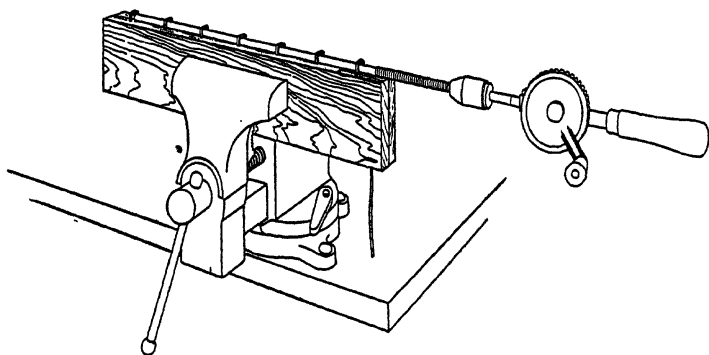


Fig. 33.—Coiling wire on the mandrel with the hand drill

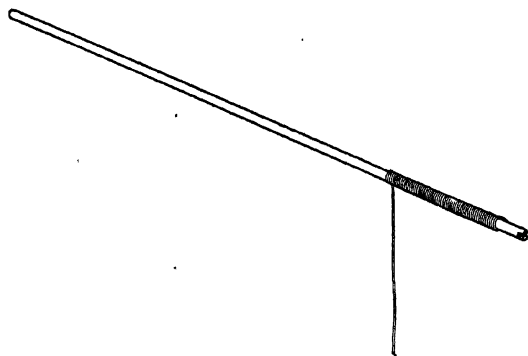
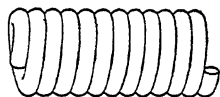


Fig. 34.—Split mandrel for wire coiling

Camel's hair brush  
 Solder  
 Mallet  
 Ring clamp  
 Jeweler's saw blades #2/0

<i>Tools</i>	Wooden core
<i>and</i>	Snub nose pliers
<i>Working</i>	Round nose pliers
<i>Materials</i>	Coiling machine (Figs. 44, 45)
	Wooden block
	3 Nails
	Wire cutters
	Sheet lead

## COIL OF ROUND RINGS

*Fig. 35.—Wire coiled on a round mandrel*

## PROCESSES

*Annealing*

p. 18

*Flattening  
the End**of the  
Wire**Placing**the**Wire*

Anneal the wire.

Place the end of the wire on a steel surface plate.

Flatten the end  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch with steel hammer.

Place the wire between two boards held in the bench vise as shown in Fig. 33; the boards must be held loose enough to let the wire move between them. A C-clamp may be used if necessary.

*Placing**the**Mandrel*

Determine the size of the mandrel by the inside diameter of the coil desired.

Insert the flattened end of the wire in the split mandrel as shown in Fig. 34.

Slip the mandrel under the staples. Boards can be prepared with staples of various sizes to hold mandrels of different sizes.

PROCESSES  
*Holding  
 the End  
 of the  
 Wire  
 and the  
 Mandrel*

Hold the mandrel with the wire end in the chuck of the hand drill as shown in Fig. 33.

## COILING

*Coiling*

Turn the drill handle.

Coil the wire straight around the mandrel.

Let each ring as it is wrapped touch the ring just completed.

Slip the coil from the mandrel (Fig. 35).

*Note:* When only a few coils are required, bend the flattened end of the wire at a right angle; clamp it on the mandrel in the vise; wind the loose end on the mandrel by hand.

## COIL OF OVAL RINGS

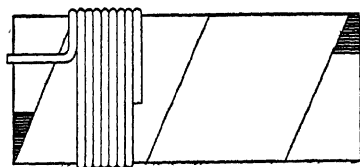


Fig. 36.—Oval mandrel and coil of oval rings

*Making  
 the  
 Mandrel*

Take a piece of metal the size of the ring desired.

*Example:* Copper, brass, nickel, silver, iron or steel  $\frac{1}{4}$  by  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch—several inches long.

## PROCESSES

*Filing*

p. 25

File all edges smooth.

Smooth all surfaces of the mandrel with emery cloth.

File the  $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch thickness slightly on one side of the  $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch width.*Wrapping  
the**Mandrel*

Cut a strip of soft wrapping paper the width of the mandrel.

Dampen the paper.

Wrap the paper around the mandrel at an angle; be sure it meets without overlapping as shown in Fig. 36.

Hold both ends of the paper to the mandrel with iron binding wire or glue.

*Annealing*

p. 18

Anneal the wire.

*Flattening  
the**Wire*

Hammer the end of the wire on the surface plate to flatten.

*Holding  
the**Wire*

Place the wire between two boards held in the vise.

Hold the flattened end of the wire and the mandrel in the jeweler's hand vise on the edge of the boards.

## COILING

*Coiling*

Coil the wire on the metal strip by turning the hand vise.

*Removing**Annealing*

Remove the mandrel from the vise.

Anneal the coil of wire on the mandrel.

*Removing**the**Coil*

Slip the coil from the mandrel.

## COILED WIRE CONE

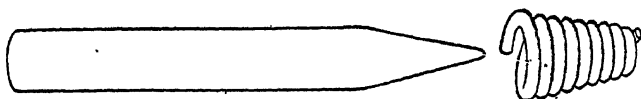


Fig. 37.—Tapered mandrel and coiled wire cone

## PROCESSES

*Coiling*

Place the flattened end of the annealed wire on the shaped mandrel held in the vise; the pointed end of the mandrel should extend beyond the jaws of the vise the desired length of the cone. Coil the wire around the mandrel until the point has been reached.

Remove the coil from the mandrel.

*Spacing*

Pull both ends of the wire if an open spiral is desired. If the wire is of heavy gauge, anneal before spacing. A flat tool may be inserted between the rings to get the desired spacing. The wire should be of heavy enough gauge so that the cone form will be kept after it has been removed from the mandrel.

*Sawing*

p. 31

Saw off both ends which extend beyond the spiral with a #1/0 saw blade.

## COILED BAND OF OVERLAPPING RINGS

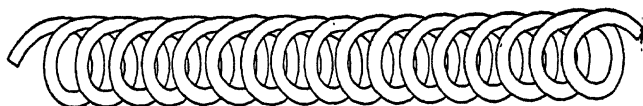


Fig. 38.—Wire coiled, spaced and flattened

*Coiling*

p. 106

Coil the annealed wire around the mandrel at an angle.

*Spacing*

Space the rings as described above.

*Flattening*

Place the coil on a flat surface. Tap gently with a wooden mallet.

## COILED WIRE KNOB

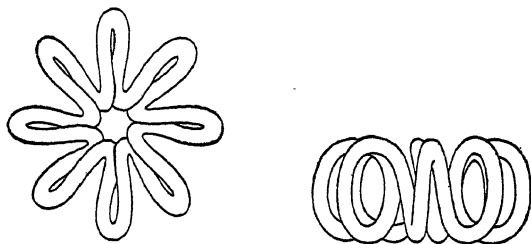


Fig. 39.—Wire coiled and spaced to form a knob

## PROCESSES

*Coiling*  
p. 106

Coil the annealed wire straight around the mandrel as described above.

Remove the coil from the mandrel.

*Forming  
the  
Knob*

Form the knob by pulling the ends of the wire together until the two ends meet.

*Filing*  
p. 25

File the ends of the wires if necessary to make an even joint and a perfect circle.

*Binding*  
p. 46

Bind the knob with binding wire to hold in place if necessary.

*Soldering*  
p. 38

Place the flux and solder on the joint.

Solder the joint.

*Truing*

The spaces between the rings may be trued after the soldering process has been completed by inserting a flat blunt tool between each ring.

## ROUND RINGS OF WIRE

*Coiling*  
p. 106

Coil the annealed wire around the mandrel shown in Fig. 33.

*Note:* Different methods are used in sawing coils into rings depending upon whether heavy or medium gauge wire is used.

## PROCESSES

*Holding*

Place the coil horizontally in the ring clamp or jeweler's hand vise.

Hold the ring clamp in the jaws of the table vise.

*Sawing**into**Rings*

Saw the coil into rings with #2/0 saw blades. Care must be taken to saw the coil straight to insure an even joint.

*Heavy**Gauge**Coil*

Hold as above if the coil keeps its shape in the vise squeeze.

*Light**Gauge**Coil*

Put on a wooden core the diameter of the coil. Hold as above.

Saw the coil into rings.

Hold both ends of the wire with pliers.

Push both ends beyond each other before bringing them together as shown in Fig. 40.

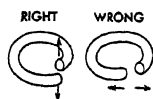


Fig. 40.—Opening a wire ring

Give the ring a gentle pressure with the pliers across the diameter if the ends do not meet.

Repeat the above in several directions to form a perfect ring if necessary.

Tap lightly with a wooden mallet on a surface plate.

*Soldering*

p. 38

Solder the joint.

## OVAL RINGS OF WIRE

*Coiling*

p. 106

Coil the annealed wire around the mandrel as shown in Fig. 36.

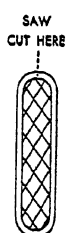
*Annealing*

p. 18

Anneal the coil.

## PROCESSES

*Sawing  
into  
Rings*  
p. 113



Saw the coil on the end of the oval as shown in Fig. 41.

Either method of holding the coil during the sawing may be used depending upon the gauge of the wire as described above. Heavy cardboard may be inserted in the coil.

*Joining  
the  
Ends*

Fig. 41.—  
*Sawing an  
oval link*

Join the ends of the ring as shown in Fig. 41.

*Soldering*  
p. 38

Solder the joint.

## FLAT COIL OF WIRE

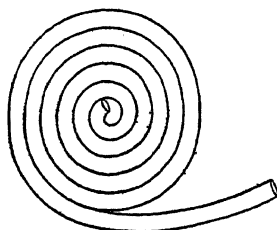


Fig. 42.—Flat coil with round center

Two methods for holding the wire can be used.

### *Method 1.*

*Flattening*

Cut a length of annealed wire several inches long.

Flatten the end of the wire with a steel hammer on a steel surface plate.

*Bending*

Bend the wire at right angles.



## PROCESSES

*Holding*

Place a small mandrel and the hammered wire end in the jaws of the vise or hold with snub nose pliers. The size of the mandrel depends upon the size of the hole desired for the center of the coil.

*Coiling*

p. 109

Coil the wire once around the mandrel.

*Note:* The first coil for wire of medium or light gauge may also be made with a pair of round nose pliers with or without flattening the end of the wire. (Fig. 42.)

Different methods are used from this point for wire of light or heavy gauge; if wire of light or medium gauge is used, remove the wire from the mandrel.

*Sawing*

p. 31

Saw or cut off the wire which extends beyond the center of the circle of wire which has been formed on the mandrel. A perfect circle should now be left with a loose end of wire. This circle forms the center of the coil.

*Holding*

Hold this ring flat between snub nose pliers in the right hand; the loose end of the wire in the left hand between the thumb and the first finger; the second finger is held under the pliers.

*Coiling*

Coil the wire around the center in successive rings that touch at all points.

*Holding*

Coiling wire of heavy gauge: hold the wire on the mandrel in a bench vise.

*Coiling*

Continue to wrap the wire around in a flat coil. The weight of the wire should be heavy enough to withstand pressure without losing form as the successive rows are coiled.

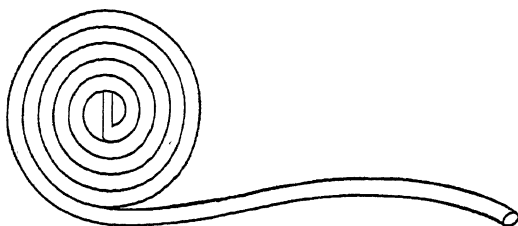
Remove from the vise.

## PROCESSES

*Sawing*

Saw off the end of the wire which was held in the vise and extends beyond the end of the circle.

## FLAT COIL OF WIRE

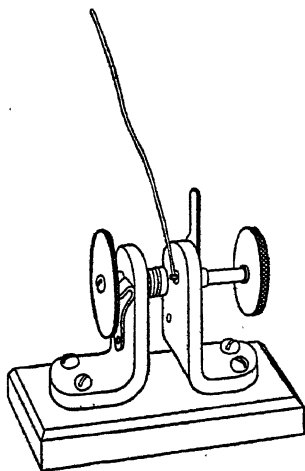


*Fig. 43.—Flat coil with broken center*

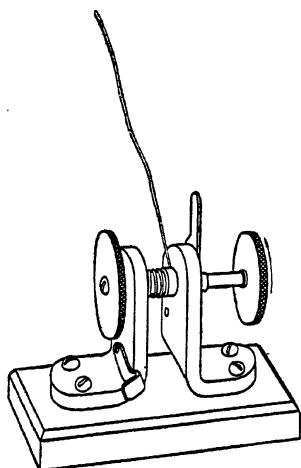
*Method 2.*

*Flattening  
the  
Wire  
End*

Hammer the end of the annealed wire to flatten.



*Fig. 44.—Inserting the wire end in the split mandrel of the coiling machine*



*Fig. 45.—Coiling wire on the coiling machine*

## PROCESSES

*Holding*

Insert the flattened end of the wire through a slit in the steel mandrel; the wire must go through the slit but not beyond it.

*Coiling*

p. 109

Coil the wire once around the mandrel.

Continue to make the coil as described above.

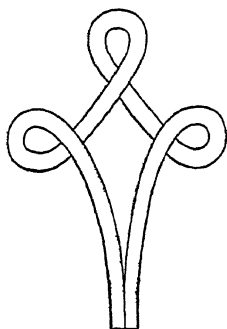
*Note:* The split mandrel can be held in a machine for coiling as shown in Figs. 44 and 45.

## COILED WIRE UNIT

*Spacing  
the  
Loops*

Draw an equilateral triangle on a block of wood.

Hammer one nail at each point; the size of the nail is determined by the size of the wire and the size of the loops desired.



*Cutting  
the  
Nail  
Heads*

Cut off the nail heads

with the wire cutters. *Fig. 46.—Wire coiled loops*

*Placing  
the  
Block*

Place the block of wood in the jaws of the table vise.

*Looping  
the  
Wire*

Coil the annealed wire around one of the nails. Carry the left-hand wire of this coil around the nail *to the right* so the wire goes toward the center of the triangle.

Carry the right-hand wire coiled around the nail *to the left* with the end of the wire again turning toward the center of the triangle.

## PROCESSES

*Joining**the**Wires*

Place the two wires together to form parallel stems for the three loops.

## QUESTIONS

1. *Why do the holes in the draw plate rust?*

Rusting is sometimes caused by drawing wire which has not been thoroughly dried.

2. *Can half-round wire be made by using a draw plate with round holes?*

Half-round wire may be made by flattening one or both sides of round wire slightly with a file or by rolling or drawing, doubling the length of wire, placing the flattened sides together and drawing as a single wire. A knife blade can be inserted between the two wires as they go through the plate to keep them from twisting.

3. *Is it possible to twist a single wire?*

Wire which has a definite edge can be twisted.

4. *What should be done to a length of wire which has twisted unevenly, some parts of the length a looser twist than other parts?*

Anneal the wire where it has twisted loosely, return to the vise and continue twisting. These loose parts will tighten and give the full length of wire a uniform twist.

5. *Can mandrels be purchased any shape or size for coiling wire?*

Mandrels are usually made out of wire or rod, any size or section, depending upon the diameter of the coil desired.

6. *Is it necessary to place the paper on all mandrels before coiling the wire?*

All mandrels other than circular in form should be wrapped with paper before coiling the wire; when the coil is annealed the paper will burn and the coil can be removed easily.

7. *Will the coil be marred if it is placed in the rough jaws of the vise or pliers?*

Sheet lead should be placed in the jaws of the vise or pliers to protect the coil for sawing.

8. *Why is the coil sometimes cut and sometimes sawed into rings?*

The joint is neater if the coil is sawed. If the ring is to be melted into a ball the coil may be cut with the shears.

---

## DOMES, BALLS, AND STAMPED FORMS

---

Domes, balls, and stamped forms used as ornaments of decoration give more weight and lustre to the design than units and motifs made of wire; they may be used as single units or may be formed into motifs for decoration. Domes are often used in place of stones and treated as the center of interest; they are made by cutting disks from sheet metal and forming them into domes, which may be decorated by piercing, carving, chasing, or by applying wires or units of metal. The dome often forms the foundation of a piece of jewelry such as a brooch, ring, or clasp as shown in Figs. 69, 70, 86, 87, 102, 103.

Balls of the same size or graded sizes must be made of a measured amount of material. This is accomplished by cutting coils of wire into rings. The size of the ball is determined by the gauge of the wire from which the coil is made and the size of the mandrel on which it is coiled; each ring is melted to form a ball. If balls do not have to be graded to size scraps of any gauge metal may be melted into balls.

Stamped forms are cut from light-weight metal with a flat steel tool with straight sharp edges. These forms may be domed with a tool or in a forming die and decorated by applied wire or with carved lines.

### DOMES

The following silver sheet is required:

Sterling silver sheet 24-, 26-, or 28-gauge for rings or bracelets.

Fine silver sheet 24-, 26-, or 28-gauge for brooches, necklaces.

Heavier gauge silver is often used for the foundation dome.

<i>Tools</i>	Metal gauge
<i>and</i>	Charcoal block
<i>Working</i>	Gas and air blow torch
<i>Materials</i>	Pickle
	Gas plate
	Copper pickle pan
	Copper tongs
	Lead dapping block
	Hammer
	Dapping die cutters and punches
	Dapping die
	File
	Emery cloth

## PROCESSES

<i>Gauging the Metal</i>	Gauge the metal sheet.
<i>Annealing p. 18</i>	Anneal the metal.
<i>Pickling p. 22</i>	Clean in pickle.
<i>Cutting the Disks</i>	Place the metal on the lead dapping die block. Strike the die cutter a sharp blow with the hammer. Repeat if the disk is not free from the metal sheet. <i>Note:</i> If the disk is larger than the dapping die cutter inscribe a circle on the metal. Saw the disk.
<i>Doming the Disk</i>	Select a hollow in the dapping die block which is slightly larger than the diameter of the disk. Place the disk in the center of the hollow.

## PROCESSES

Place the dapping punch in the center of the disk.

Strike the dapping punch with the hammer to force the metal into the hollow. Deeper domes may be made by doming in successive smaller hollows. The metal may have to be annealed several times if the domes are to be hammered to any great depth.

*Filing*  
p. 25

File the base of the disk even.

Smooth with emery cloth.

## BALLS

*Tools*  
*and*  
*Working*  
*Materials*

Fine silver wire  
Table vise or jeweler's hand vise  
Round mandrel  
Jeweler's shears  
Powdered borax  
Gas and air blow torch  
Charcoal block  
Steel tweezers

*Coiling*  
p. 108

Coil the wire around the mandrel.

*Cutting*  
*the*  
*Rings*

Cut the coil into rings.

*Melting*  
*the*  
*Rings*  
*into*  
*Balls*

Make a thick flux of borax.

Dip the ring in the flux.

Place the ring on the charcoal block.

Direct onto the ring the part of the flame just above the blue cone.

Melt the ring into a ball.

Repeat. Use the same method in melting the other rings.



## STAMPED FORMS

<i>Tools</i>	Fine silver 26- or 28-gauge
<i>and</i>	Battleship linoleum or sheet lead 10- or 12-
<i>Working</i>	gauge
<i>Materials</i>	Stamping tool
	Hammer

## PROCESSES

<i>Stamping</i>	Place the metal on the linoleum or sheet lead.
<i>the</i>	Place the stamping tool on the metal.
<i>Forms</i>	Strike the stamping tool a sharp blow with the hammer.
	Bend the linoleum or lead sheet.
	Remove the form which is embedded.

## QUESTIONS

1. *Why is sterling used in place of fine silver for domes on rings and bracelets?*

Fine silver dents easily and these two articles receive harder wear than brooches and pendants.

2. *Can sterling silver be melted into balls?*

Sterling silver can be used but fine silver makes a smoother ball and has more lustre.

3. *Why are balls flat on one side when melted on the charcoal block?*

If the metal is melted and cooled on the flat surface of the charcoal block, one side of the ball will be flat. This is often an advantage as the ball is easier to place.

4. *How can metal be melted into balls without the flat side?*

Make small depressions in the charcoal block with a rounded tool. Melt the metal in this depression,

5. *Can balls be flattened into disks?*

Hammer the ball directly on top to flatten it into a disk; anneal it if it starts to break around the edges.

6. *How is a large ball given a smooth surface?*

Place the ball while slightly warm on the shellac stick. Buff the surface with tripoli and felt buffing wheel to smooth the surface.

7. *Should balls be removed from the charcoal block while still red hot?*

Wait until the red glow disappears before removing the ball.

8. *Why is linoleum or sheet lead used to stamp the forms on?*

This material is used so the embedded form may be removed with ease by breaking or bending the material.

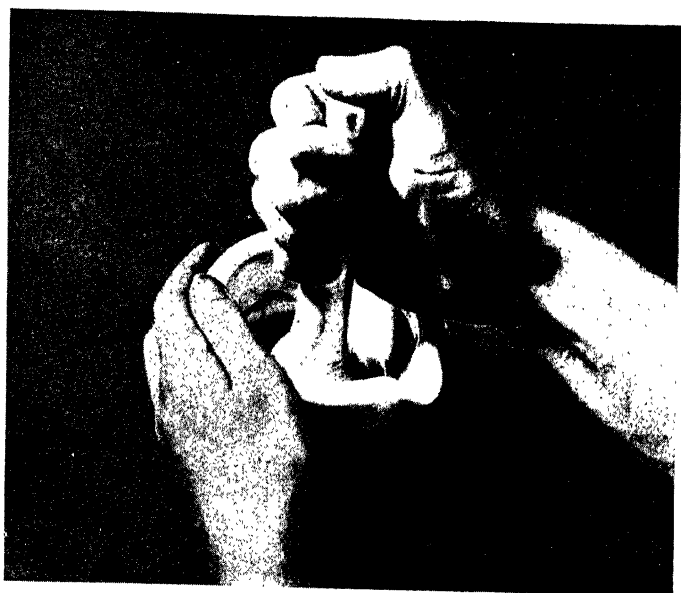
9. *Is the stamping tool used for large forms?*

This method of stamping is used only for small forms.

10. *Can sterling silver be used for stamped forms?*

Annealed sterling silver may be used but it is more difficult to cut than fine silver, which is softer and has more lustre.

---



*Fig. 47.—Grinding the enamel in a porcelain mortar with pestle*

---

## ENAMELING

---

Enameling is one of the oldest forms of metal decoration. It is used in jewelry to add richness of color, to enhance the beauty of stones, and to vary motifs. Enamels are composed of several ingredients which melt under heat to form a glazed surface either on a metal background or inserted in a network of wires without a background.

Soft enamels require less heat and fuse readily on the background, but produce a comparatively soft surface. Hard enamels require more intense heat to fuse satisfactorily, but produce a hard durable surface. Both forms of enamel are made to produce transparent, translucent, and opaque surfaces and come in varying degrees of hardness.

There are five distinct styles of enamel. Champlevé, Cloisonné, Bassetaille, and Limoges all require a foundation of metal. Plique à jour is held between cloisons of wire without a background.

It is apparent that when enamel is used design must take into account thickness, dullness, lustre, uneven surfaces, metal construction lines, color, and texture that are peculiar to enamel. When stones and enamel are combined the principles of design that apply to each medium must be adhered to but the two must be merged in such a way that each enhances the beauty of the other. In jewelry, enamel should be used in small areas to retain the jewel-like quality it should have. A few colors, and those brilliant, give the best results.

*Tools  
and  
Working  
Materials*

Metal—Gold 18-K or over, free from zinc in the alloy	
Sterling or fine silver	
Copper—gilding metal	
Metal gauge	Tracing paper
Jeweler's saw frame	White beeswax or car-
Jeweler's saw blade	bon paper
#1/0	Pencil
Bench pin	Scratch awl
Flat file	Pumice powder
Blow torch	Burnisher, scraper, or
Pickle	graver
Pickle pan	Enamel
Gas plate	Metal mortar and pes-
Copper tongs	tle or steel crusher
Wooden spatula	(See Figs. 48, 49)
Soda, ammonia, and	Wedgwood or agate
water solution	mortar (See Fig.
Granite pan	47)
Scotch stone	Porcelain or agate
Emery cloth	pestle

*Tools  
and  
Working  
Materials*

Set of shallow china dishes	Scraper or pointed steel tool
Steel spatula or palette knife	Shellac stick
Small camel's hair brush	Oil stone
White blotting paper	Light oil
Enameling muffle furnace	Gravers
Rouge paste	Kerosene cloth
Palette knives, large and small	Binding wire 28-gauge
Steel cradle (See Fig. 50)	Two pieces of sheet iron 24-gauge, 4 or 6 inches
Iron tongs	Bench vise
Small scrub brush	Draw tongs
Rubber, felt, or leather pad	Round hole draw plate
Corundum stone	Round nose pliers
Dish lined with paraffin	Blunt nose pliers
Hydrofluoric acid	Brass block
Pumice stone	Chisel
Leather strip	Hammer
Polishing motor	Steel tweezers
Felt buffing wheel	Flux
Crocus powder	Borax slate
Chamois cloth	Gold solder
Hard felt wheel or wooden wheel 6 inches diameter	Jeweler's shears
Liquid shellac	Gum tragacanth solution
Alcohol	Curved burnisher
Yellow flake shellac	Chaser's wax or modeling clay
	Plate glass slab
	Four wooden strips (See Fig. 52)
	Plaster of Paris

<i>Tools</i>	Binding wire 30-	Foil
<i>and</i>	gauge	Gummed tissue
<i>Working</i>	Mica sheet	Paper shears
<i>Materials</i>	Steel cotter pins	
	Needles mounted in cork	
	Glass bottles, large openings	
	Pickle for Silver—one part sulphuric acid, nine parts water	
	Pickle for Gold—one part nitric acid, eight parts water	
	Pickle for Copper—one part nitric acid, two parts water. If the metal is incised with the graver or tool polished do not dull the lustre by pickling.	

### PREPARATION FOR APPLYING THE ENAMEL

*(Choose one of the five methods)*

#### PROCESSES

#### THE METAL

<i>Gauging</i> p. 346	Gauge the metal. The gauge of the metal used will depend upon the method of enameling chosen.
<i>Sawing</i> p. 31	Saw the metal to pattern.
<i>Filing</i> p. 25	File the edges.
<i>Annealing</i> p. 18	Anneal the metal.
<i>Pickling</i> p. 22	Clean in pickle. Rinse in soda, ammonia, and water solution. Remove any scratches with a file, scotch stone, or emery cloth.

PROCESSES  
*Transferring  
 the  
 Design*

Transfer the design and scratch into the surface of the metal.

*Preparing  
 the  
 Surface*

Prepare the surface of the metal to hold the enamel. This will depend upon which of the five methods is chosen.

*Cleaning  
 p. 70*

Clean the metal. (See Question 4.)

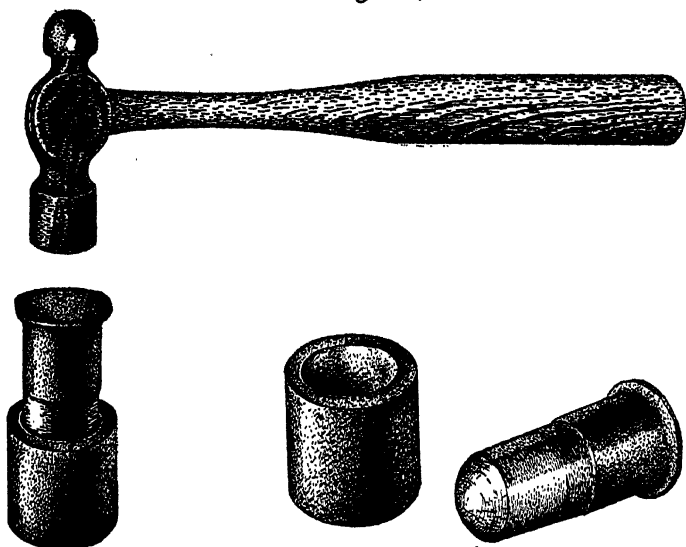
*Immersing*

Immerse in a bowl of clear water until ready to apply the enamels to keep the metal from oxidizing.

### THE ENAMEL

*Crushing*

Crush the lumps of enamel in the metal crusher as shown in Figs. 48, 49.



*Fig. 49.—Crushing  
 the enamel*

*Fig. 48.—Enamel crusher*

## PROCESSES

*Grinding  
the**Enamel  
Medium  
and  
Fine*

Place the crushed enamel in a porcelain or agate mortar.

Wash in clear water.

Pour enough water in the mortar to cover the enamel.

Rotate the pestle firmly on the enamel in the mortar as shown in Fig. 47. Hold the elbow close to the body. Allow the ground enamel to settle.

Pour off the milky water.

Continue the grinding and washing process until the transparent or translucent enamel has been reduced to the consistency of coarse pumice powder. Opaque enamels should be ground finer. The final rinse water should be clear. Place the enamel after the final grinding and washing in a shallow porcelain dish in water ready for use.

*Very  
Fine*

Use an agate mortar and pestle to grind enamels very fine; a mullar and plate glass sheet may also be used.

## APPLYING THE ENAMEL TO THE METAL

*(Called Flooding In or Charging)*

*Flooding  
In or  
Charging*

Take a small daub of enamel on a wood or metal spatula, or a small camel's hair brush.

Saturate the ground enamel with water. If too wet, it will run off the spatula; if too dry, it will cling to the spatula.

Lay the enamel thinly and evenly on the metal. Tap the edge of the charged piece lightly to spread the enamel more evenly, in the small



## PROCESSES

*Absorbing  
the  
Moisture*

spaces; press the enamel into large areas with a small palette knife.

Apply the edge of a small strip of white blotting paper to the edges of the enamel to absorb any moisture.

*Removing  
Surplus  
Enamel  
From the  
Surrounding  
Metal*

Remove any surplus enamel from the metal with a fine camel's hair brush slightly dampened.

*Note:* Enamel too thickly applied chips when fired; if too thinly applied, bare spaces appear on the enameled surface.

## PREPARATION FOR FIRING

*Heating  
the  
Kiln*

Heat the kiln—1400° F. or more. Hot enough to fuse the enamel.

*Protecting  
the  
Soldered  
Joints*

Protect any soldered joints with rouge paste; care must be taken to keep the rouge away from the enamel.

*Placing  
the  
Charged  
Piece  
for  
Firing*

Place the piece charged with enamel in the center of the cradle as shown in Fig. 50.

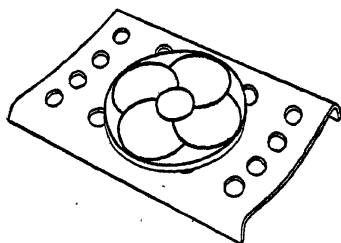


Fig. 50.—Cradle of sheet iron or steel

## PROCESSES

## FIRING THE ENAMEL

<i>Drying the Enamel</i>	Place the cradle in front of the open furnace and dry the enamel thoroughly. Grasp the cradle with the long tongs and insert it in the furnace. Withdraw quickly. If enamel is steaming repeat the above process; the enamel must be thoroughly dry before firing.
<i>Firing the Enamel</i>	Place the piece thoroughly dried in the center of the furnace. Watch carefully and remove when the enamel has fused and the surface has become glossy.
<i>Cooling</i>	Allow to cool in a warm place.

## FINISHING

<i>Pickling</i> p. 22	Pickle the enameled piece—gold or copper in nitric acid pickle, silver in sulphuric acid pickle.
<i>Cleaning</i>	Scrub well with a stiff brush charged with fine pumice powder; wash well under running water.
<i>Recharging</i>	Apply the enamel and dry out as above.
<i>Refiring</i>	Place the enamel on a hot cradle and fire before the cradle cools. Examine the enamel. If the surface is uneven or the color is lost or if the enamel is too thick the surface will have to be stoned and cleaned in acid and refired; if the enamel has shrunk, the surface will have to be recharged.
<i>Stoning</i>	Place the enameled piece on rubber, felt, or leather. This will relieve the strain on the enamel.

## PROCESSES

Rub a corundum stone over the surface if uneven or if the color is lost. Keep both the stone and the enamel wet—running water is best. The surface of the enamel should be even with the metal surface.

*Dipping  
in  
Acid*

Wash in clear water.

Paint a coat of paraffin on the inside of a saucer or bowl.

Pour hydrofluoric acid in the saucer.

Dip the article in the hydrofluoric acid to remove any residue left after stoning. Care must be taken not to inhale the fumes of this acid. It must be kept in a covered container of gutta-percha or paraffin.

Rinse in clear running water.

Dry the piece.

*Recharging  
Refiring*

Recharge the surface if the enamel has shrunk.

Refire to bring back the lustre after stoning or recharging.

*Pickling  
Washing*

Pickle the metal.

Wash the metal in water. The piece may have to be charged and fired several times.

*Polishing  
by  
Machine  
for  
High Polish*

Hold the article to be polished on a piece of leather.

Cover the enameled surface with fine wet pumice powder.

Buff with a felt buffing wheel.

Add more pumice as it is buffed off by the action of the wheel. Continue until the desired lustre has been obtained.

Wash thoroughly in clear water.

Care must be taken not to wear down the metal which is softer than the enamel.

## PROCESSES

*Finishing**Mat with**Abrasives*

Rub the surface with pumice powder and water. Clean with scotch stone; rub in a circular movement; keep the scotch stone wet during this operation.

*Finishing**Mat with**Acids*

Dip the stoned and washed piece in a solution of hydrofluoric acid to make the enameled surface dull.

*Combining**Mat and**Polished**Surfaces*

If only parts of the surface are to be dull, cover the parts to remain polished with shellac.

Dip in hydrofluoric acid for a few minutes until the surface of the exposed enamel is dull. Wash thoroughly in water.

Soak in alcohol to remove the shellac.

### REPAIRING FLAWS IN THE ENAMELED SURFACE AFTER FIRING

*Repairing**Holes**and**Uncovered**Spots*

Clean out any holes in the enamel with a scraper or graver or pointed steel tool.

Scrape any uncovered spots in the metal and remove any discoloration on the enameled edge.

Rub with a corundum stone.

Dip in hydrofluoric acid.

Wash in clear water with a stiff brush.

Recharge holes or the entire surface with enamel if necessary.

Refire as described above.

### CHAMPLEVÉ ENAMEL

The enamel is fused into a sunken surface of metal in which the design has been carved, stamped, pierced, or soldered to a background, or etched with acid. Casting is also used although the cast surface is rather porous for this type of work.

The following metal sheet and enamel are required:

Silver or gold 18-gauge

Copper 16- to 18-gauge

Transparent, translucent, or opaque enamel

#### PROCESSES

*Preparing  
the  
Metal*  
p. 128

Prepare the metal for enameling.

*Carving  
to  
Prepare  
the  
Surface*  
p. 87

Carve the scratched outline of the design with an onglette graver.

Carve the design in the metal with a blunt graver about  $\frac{1}{80}$  to  $\frac{1}{20}$  inch below the surface. A small edge of metal the original thickness should be left around the design. Roughened surfaces act as keys to hold the enamel. Care must be exercised in cutting the metal as flaws will be magnified if transparent or translucent enamel is used.

*Preparing  
the  
Enamel*  
p. 129

Prepare the enamel.

*Charging*  
p. 130

Charge the sunken surfaces with enamel.

*Preparing  
for  
Firing*  
p. 131

Prepare for firing.

*Firing*  
p. 132

Heat the enamel until it fuses.

## PROCESSES

<i>Repairing</i> p. 134	Remove any flaws on the enameled surface.
<i>Recharging and Refiring</i> p. 132	Recharge and refire the enamel; repeat several times if necessary until the enamel is flush with the metal surface.
<i>Finishing</i> p. 132	Finish the enameled surface.

## CLOISONNÉ ENAMEL

Cloisonné is made in sections formed of flattened wire set edgewise to form boxes or cloisons into which the enamel is fused. The cloisons are arranged to form the design.

The following metal sheet, wire, solder, and enamel are required:

- Sterling or fine silver or gold sheet, 24- to 26-gauge
- $\frac{1}{32}$  inch wide 32-gauge wire
- Transparent, translucent, or opaque enamel
- Solder 9-K, 18-K gold wire for pure gold

## PROCESSES

<i>Preparing the Metal</i> p. 128	Sterling silver sheet, 24-gauge. Prepare the metal background. The metal may be raised slightly toward the center if desired.
<i>Annealing the Wire</i> p. 20	Sterling silver wire $\frac{1}{32}$ inch wide, 32-gauge. Make a coil of wire and bind as shown in Fig. 4. Place the coil of wire between two pieces of sheet iron to anneal.
<i>Winding the Wire</i>	Wind the wire tightly on a spool* to keep it from kinking.

## PROCESSES

*Forming  
the**Cloisons*

Form the wire cloisons with small pliers to follow the outline of the design.

*Cutting  
the**Wire*

Place the wire on a block of brass.

Use a small sharp chisel to cut wire units.

*Applying  
the**Cloisons*

Dip the cloison in gum tragacanth solution and flux.

Place the cloisons on the metal background; follow the scratched line of the design. Continue this with the other cloisons.

*Soldering*  
p. 38

Place small pieces of solder on the joints of wire and the background; use as little solder as possible.

Solder in place.

*Note:* Often just the outer cloisons or the main part of the cloisons are held on with solder.

*Pickling*

p. 22

Clean in pickle.

*Cleaning*

Clean the metal background between cloisons with a scraper or burnisher.

*Immersing**Preparing  
the**Enamel*

Immerse in a bowl of cold water.

Prepare the enamel.

p. 129

*Charging*

p. 130

*Preparing  
for**Firing*

p. 131

Charge the metal background until the enamel is level with the rim of the cloison.

Prepare for firing.

## PROCESSES

<i>Firing</i> p. 132	Fire the enamel until it fuses.
<i>Removing Flaws</i> p. 134	Remove any flaws from the enameled surface.
<i>Recharging and Refiring</i>	Recharge and refire the enamel. This may have to be done several times until the enamel is flush with the top of the cloisons.
<i>Finishing</i> p. 132	Finish the enameled surface.

## BASSETAILLE ENAMEL

Bassetaille enamel is much like champlevé enamel. The design is carved or executed in repoussé in low relief about  $\frac{1}{30}$  inch below the surface. Transparent enamel is fused over the design, possibly several times, until a uniform surface is obtained. For this method gold or silver should be used as the reflecting quality is better than copper. The design may be concave or convex and must be executed with great care; interesting shadow effects are obtained as the depth of the enamel varies. One or more colors may be used.

The following metal sheet and enamel are required:

Silver or gold sheet, 18-gauge or heavier	} for a carved design
Copper sheet, 18-gauge or heavier	

Silver or gold 26- or 27-gauge	} for a repoussé design
Copper 24- or 25-gauge	

Transparent enamel

## PROCESSES

<i>Preparing the Metal</i> p. 128	Prepare the metal.
--	--------------------



## PROCESSES

*Preparing  
the  
Surface  
Carving*

p. 87

or

*Repoussé*

p. 77

*Burnishing*

Model the design either by carving or repoussé. The higher part should be about  $\frac{1}{30}$  inch below the rim which remains the original thickness of the metal.

Burnish the surface to clean.

If the surface has been incised with the graver this will be sufficient.

*Immersing*

Immerse in a bowl of cold water until ready to apply the enamel.

*Preparing  
the*

*Enamel*

p. 129

*Charging*

p. 130

Prepare the enamel.

Charge the piece with enamel. If several colors are used let each one dry before adding another as there is no retaining wall between colors. A small amount of gum tragacanth can be mixed with the enamel to keep it from spreading.

If the design has been executed in repoussé the metal must be keyed on the back with a graver and enamel mixed with a little gum tragacanth painted on. Absorb the moisture with blotting paper before charging the other side.

*Preparing  
for*

*Firing*

p. 131

Prepare for firing.

## PROCESSES

- Firing* Fire the enamel until it fuses.  
p. 132
- Removing  
Flaws* Remove any flaws on the enameled surface.  
p. 134
- Recharging  
and  
Refiring* Recharge and refire the enamel until it is even  
with the outside rim.  
The last layer of enamel should be crystal clear.  
p. 132
- Finishing* Finish the surface.  
p. 132

## LIMOGES OR PAINTED ENAMEL

Limoges or painted enamel is used mainly for pictorial work. The enamel, ground very fine, is painted and fused on the metal without a retaining wall to separate colors or parts of the design.

The following metal sheet and enamel are required:

Silver and gold sheet, 26-, 27-, or 28-gauge

Copper sheet, 24-, 25-, or 26-gauge

Transparent, translucent, or opaque enamel

## PROCESSES

- Preparing  
the  
Metal* Prepare the metal for enameling.  
p. 128
- Preparing  
the  
Surface* Raise slightly toward the center using a curved  
burnisher, or place it on a stake, and planish  
the surface.  
Turn the edge down at an angle.  
Key the under side of the dome with a graver.

## PROCESSES

*Filing*

p. 25

File the edges until they rest evenly on a flat surface.

Leave the rough edge or burr on the edge; it helps to hold the enamel in place.

*Transferring the**Design*

p. 36

Transfer the design and scratch the outline into the metal; use the carbon method.

*Annealing*

p. 18

Anneal the metal.

*Pickling*

p. 22

Clean in pickle.

*Cleaning**Preparing the**Enamel*

p. 129

Scrub with a brush and fine pumice powder.

Prepare the enamel. (See Question 6.)

*Charging the**Convex**Side*

p. 130

Place the raised metal on a piece of white blotting paper, convex side down.

Mix a little solution of gum tragacanth with the enamel.

Charge the keyed surface evenly with the enamel.

Absorb the moisture with a strip of white blotting paper.

*Charging the**Concave**Side*

Turn the enameled piece over; let it rest on a clean piece of blotting paper.

Charge each section with enamel and absorb the moisture with strips of white blotting paper. Each section should be nearly dry before placing a new color next to it. This precaution will keep the colors from running into each other.

## PROCESSES

<i>Preparing for Firing</i> p. 131	Prepare the piece for firing.
<i>Firing</i> p. 132	Fire the enamel until it fuses.
<i>Repairing</i> p. 134	Remove any flaws which occur in the enameled surface.
<i>Recharging and Refiring</i> p. 132	Recharge and refire. The piece may have to be recharged and refired several times to get a smooth surface or the desired depth of color.
<i>Finishing</i> p. 132	Finish the enameled surface.

## PLIQUE À JOUR ENAMEL

Plique à jour enamel is the name given to enamel set in wire filigree or pierced metal sheet which forms a fretwork for the enamel and remains a part of the design in the finished piece. When held to the light it has the appearance of stained glass surrounded by metal frames.

The following metal sheet or oblong wire and enamel are required:

- Silver or gold sheet, 18- to 20-gauge
- Copper sheet, 16- to 18-gauge
- Oblong wire
- Transparent enamel

## PROCESSES

<i>Annealing</i> p. 18	Anneal the wire.
<i>Wire Drawing</i> p. 96	Draw the flat wire through the round draw plate to curve the edges slightly to form a slight hollow. This acts as a key to hold the enamel,

## PROCESSES

*Shaping*

Shape the wire according to the design with the pliers and tweezers, the hollow side of the wire on the inside.

*Cutting*  
p. 137

Cut the wires, where necessary, to form units with the chisel.

*Placing  
the  
Units  
in  
Wax*

Place chaser's wax or modeling clay on a glass surface, the area a little larger than the design. Level the top of the wax or clay.

Place the units to form the design on the wax or clay. Under each unit place pieces of binding wire 28- or 30-gauge. Let the ends extend upward and beyond the wire edge of the unit about  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch.

Press the units into the wax or clay, only a small edge extending above as shown in Fig. 51.

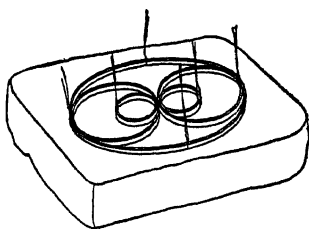


Fig. 51.—Wire units pressed into clay or wax

*Boxing*

Wet four strips of wood in water and place around the wax to form a box; let them extend an inch or more above the wax or clay surface as shown in Fig. 52.

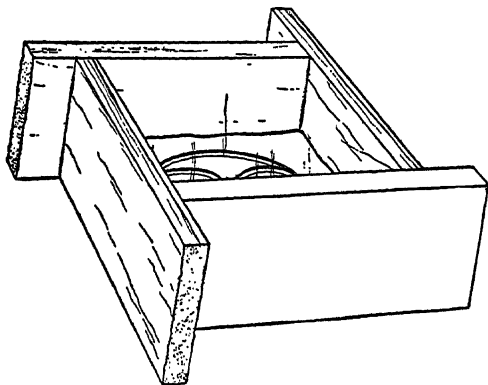
*Making  
the  
Mold*

Mix some plaster of Paris with water; stir slowly until the mixture is of creamy consistency.

Pour in a small amount of plaster and blow

## PROCESSES

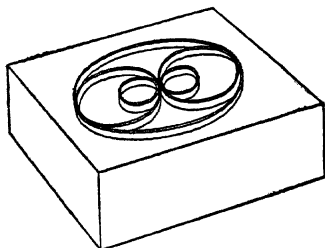
over the surface of the embedded motif; continue with the pouring until the plaster is level with the top of the box.



*Fig. 52.—Wooden strips to form a box for the mold*

Let the plaster set, remove the boards, and draw out the wax or clay. The binding wires should be firm in the plaster to hold the units in place as shown in Fig. 53.

Bake to remove all moisture from the plaster.



*Fig. 53.—Wire units embedded in a plaster of Paris mold*

*Cleaning  
the  
Motif*

Remove all plaster and oxidation from the wires with a scraper.

## PROCESSES

*Soldering*

p. 38

Cover all joints and points of contact with flux. Apply small pieces of solder or solder filings. Solder.

*Removing the**Motif**from the**Plaster*

Soak the mold in water to release the wire design.

*Pickling*

p. 22

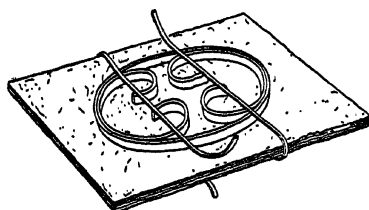
Clean in pickle.

*Cleaning*

Clean the wires with a scraper or burnisher.

*Immersing*

Immerse in a bowl of cold water until ready to charge with enamel.



*Fig. 54.—Motif held to a mica sheet with nickel cotter pins*

*Preparing the**Enamel*

p. 129

Prepare the enamel.

*Backing the**Filigree*

Place the motif on a piece of mica—the mica may first be laid on a piece of sheet iron. If the motif is large it should be held to the mica with U-shaped wires made of nickel, as shown in Fig. 54.

## PROCESSES

*Charging*

p. 130

Charge the cells made by the wires; more enamel can be placed in the center than at the edges.

*Firing*

p. 132

Fire the enamel until it fuses.

*Repairing*

Remove any flaws on the enameled surface.

*Recharging*

and

*Refiring*

Recharge and refire until the enameled cells are full.

*Finishing*

p. 132

Finish the enamel on both sides of the piece.

*Piercing*

p. 35

*Note:* The design may be pierced from metal sheet to form a fretwork.

*Keying*

Incise the sides of the metal in several places on each side of all openings with the graver. This is called keying and holds the enamel in place.

## FOILS

Gold, silver, or platinum foils can be used in many decorative ways. Transparent enamel may be fused over the foil to give it greater brilliancy or the foil may be cut into decorative motifs and applied to the enamel and a clear transparent enamel fused over the surface for protection. Care must be taken not to change the brilliancy or color of the enamel when it is used over the foil. Yellow, green, red, or green blue may be used over gold foil and blue and violet over silver or platinum foil to produce the best color values.

## PROCESSES

*Charging*

and

*Firing*

Charge the metal with enamel.

Fire the piece.



## PROCESSES

- Holding the Foils*  
*Pricking the Surface*  
*Transferring the Design*  
*Cutting*  
*Removing the Tissue*  
*Holding the Foil*  
*Shading*  
*Firing*  
*Recharging and Refiring*  
*Finishing*
- Place the foil between gummed tissue paper.
- Prick the entire surface with needle points.
- Transfer the design to be cut on the tissue paper.
- Cut the pattern with the shears.
- Soak the foil in water to remove the tissue.
- Hold the foil unit to the enameled surface with a solution of gum tragacanth.
- Soften the outline of the foil by shading with finely ground enamel painted on with a brush. This will not be necessary if the foil is used in cloisonné or champlevé enamel where there is a definite edge of metal.
- Fire the piece until the foil holds firmly and smoothly to the enameled surface.
- Recharge and refire the enameled piece.
- Finish the enameled surface.
- p. 132
- p. 132

## QUESTIONS

1. *Is it always necessary to have a furnace to melt the enamels?*  
A blow torch can be used for some types of enameling though care must be taken to keep the direct flame from the enamel surface.

2. *What kind of heat is usually used for the furnace?*  
Electricity or gas are preferred; oil and coke are also used.

3. *What metals should be used for enamel work?*  
Gold, 18-K or finer; silver, sterling or fine silver; copper; gilding metal or fine bronze.

4. *If the metal has been incised with a graver or tool polished should it be pickled?*

Pickling dulls the lustre of the tool finish. Care must be taken not to touch the surface. Immerse immediately in water until the piece is ready to charge the enamel.

5. *How are enamels purchased?*

Enamels are purchased from the factory in lump form by the pound, ounce, or quarter ounce in almost any color.

6. *How is enamel ground into a powder?*

An agate mortar and pestle are used with a small amount of water to grind the enamel to the consistency required.

7. *Should fused samples of the enamels be made before using?*

Samples should be made of the enamels before using to test the fusing point of each enamel and its color.

8. *Can enamels be combined to change the color?*

Enamels of the same fusing can be mixed together, charged and fired, but a better effect will be obtained by fusing a transparent color over an opaque color.

9. *How can fired enamel be removed from the surface of the metal?*

Hold the enameled piece in cold water and tap the obverse side with a steel hammer. Place in hydrofluoric acid.

10. *Can ground enamel be kept?*

Ground enamel can be kept in water for short period of time, if kept in a wide-mouthed bottle well corked.

11. *Does gum tragacanth change the color of the enamel?*

Gum tragacanth used in liquid form and only a small quantity in the enamel, or on the foils does not discolor the enamel.

12. *What is enamel flux?*

Enamel flux is the clear substance into which oxides are mixed to form the colored enamels.

13. *Why are fluxes used?*

Transparent enamels are more brilliant if fired over a coating of flux.

14. *What solder should be used?*

To prevent discoloration in the enamel gold solder should be used. For general soldering 9-K is used; for fine gold 18-K gold wire is used.

15. *What metal is used for the cradles?*

Nickel is preferred for the cradles as it does not scale. Iron may be used but should have a coating of rouge on the surface.

16. *Why are the cradles equally perforated?*

To obtain a uniform heat for the enameled piece under fire.

17. *How is the tarnish removed from the foil?*

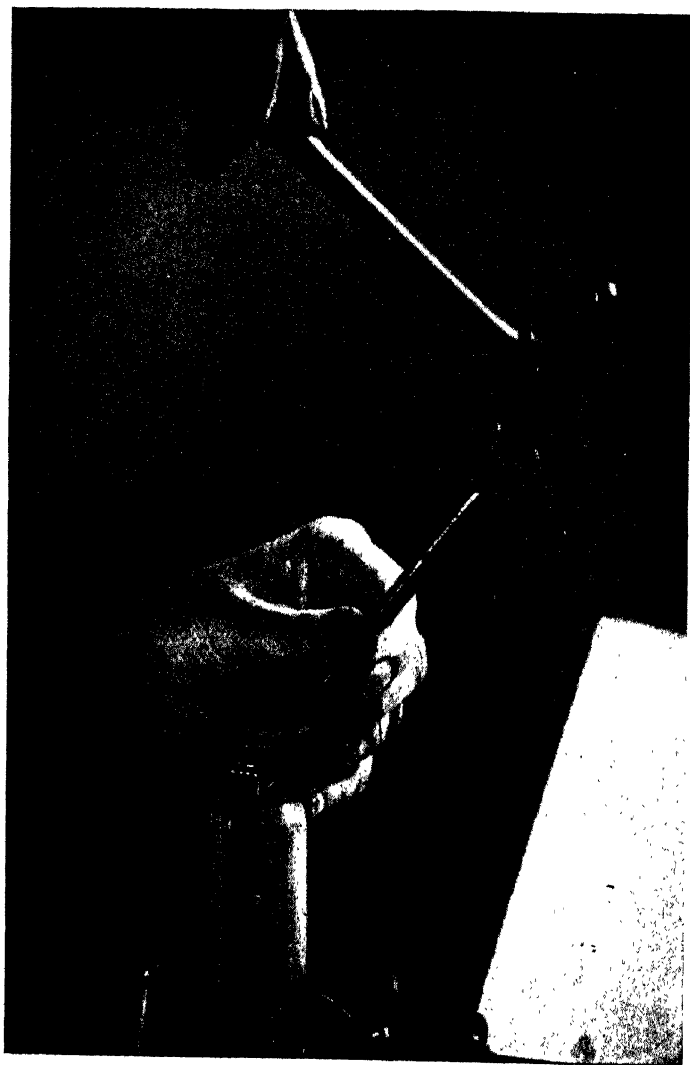
Anneal the foil in the furnace.

18. *Why do the foils crinkle when they are fired?*

Foils should be annealed before being applied to the enamel. Many of the foils are annealed when purchased.

19. *Why is the foil perforated with holes?*

To make it easier to handle and less likely to crinkle, also to allow air to escape.



*Fig. 55.—Setting the stone*

---

## STONE SETTING

---

Stones are set in jewelry to give color and lustre. They are selected to suit the design or the design is made to fit around the stone, thus making the setting and the design a single unit. The method to be used for settings is determined by the shape and cut of the stone and the construction and design of the article. Four methods used for setting stones in hand-made jewelry are the round bezel as shown in Fig. 56, the mitered bezel as shown in Fig. 58, the claw or crown setting as shown in Fig. 59, and the paved or gypsy setting as shown in Fig. 62.

The round and mitered bezels require a set-in bearing of flat metal or wire, which not only strengthens the bezel but insures an even base for the stone when the bezel is soldered on a curved surface. It also raises the stone high enough to allow for a decoration at the base of the bezel if desired. The bearing for a gypsy setting is carved into the metal. The bearing for a claw or crown setting can either be carved or set in.

The following silver sheet is required:

- Sterling silver sheet 26-gauge for the round bezel
- Sterling silver sheet 26- or 28-gauge for the bearing
- Sterling silver sheet 16- or 18-gauge for the claw or crown setting
- Sterling silver sheet 10-gauge or heavier for the paved or gypsy setting

### *Tools*

### *and*

### *Working*

### *Materials*

Dentimetre

Binding wire

26-gauge

Jeweler's shears

Dividers

Metal gauge

Charcoal block

Gas and air blow torch

Pickle

Copper pickle pan

Copper tongs

Gas plate

<i>Tools</i>	Flat nose pliers	Whiting
<i>and</i>	Binding wire	Bench pin
<i>Working</i>	28-gauge	Jeweler's saw frame
<i>Materials</i>	Flux	Jeweler's saw blade
	Borax slate or saucer	#1/0
	Solder	Small square file
	Camel's hair brush	Ruler
	Bench vise	Scratch awl
	Round mandrel	Pencil compass
	Wood or rawhide mallet	Tracing paper
	Wax stone lifter	Soft pencil
	Half round file	White beeswax
	Steel hammer	Soft cloth
	Cotter pins	Yellow flake shellac
	Scotch stone	Shellac stick, ring clamp, or hand vise
	Emery cloth	Gravers
	Polishing motor	Oilstone
	Felt buffing wheel	Light oil
	Tripoli cake	Kerosene cloth
	Soda, ammonia, and water solution	Center punch
	Granite pan	Hand drill
	Cloth or chamois buf- fing wheel	Twist drill
	Rouge stick	Small repoussé tool
	Potassium sulphide so- lution	Chasing hammer
		Pusher
		Burnisher
		Soft cloth buffing wheel

## ROUND BEZEL AND BEARING

A round bezel is made of a band of metal formed into a collar to fit closely around the stone. A strip of metal or wire the same gauge or lighter than the bezel, cut narrower, is set inside and fitted closely to the bezel for the girdle of the stone to rest upon. Enough of the bezel is allowed to extend above the bearing to be tapped and burnished over the stone to hold the setting firmly in place.

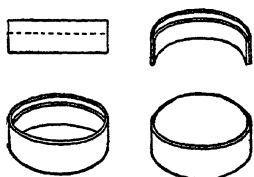


Fig. 56.—Round collar, bearing, and cabochon stone

Type  
of  
Stone

Round cabochon stone.

## PROCESSES.

Measuring  
the  
Circumference  
of the  
Stone

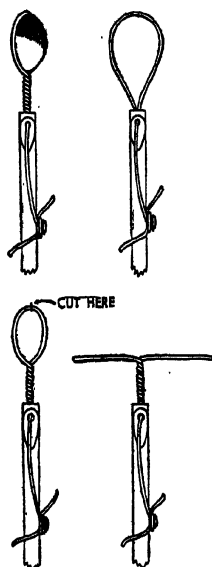


Fig. 57.—Measuring the girdle of a stone with the dentimetre and binding wire

Make a loop of 26-gauge binding wire. Run the two ends of the wire into the holes of the dentimetre.

Place the stone in the loop.

Twist the wire until it fits the girdle of the stone.

Cut the loop in the center.

Spread the ends to determine the length to cut the strip for the bezel.

## PROCESSES

*Measuring  
the  
Depth  
of the  
Stone*

Determine the width of the strip for the bezel.  
If the bezel is set on a curved surface, measure  
from the girdle of the stone well over the curve.

## BEZEL

*Gauging*  
p. 346

Gauge the metal, sterling silver sheet 26-gauge.

*Annealing*  
p. 18

Anneal the metal.

*Pickling*  
p. 22

Clean in pickle.

*Filing*  
p. 25

File one edge straight.

*Laying  
out  
the  
Pattern*

Place one arm of the dividers over the straight  
edge of the silver sheet.

*Cutting*

Cut the strip thus marked.

*Fitting*

Bend the strip so the two ends meet; file if  
necessary to make an even joint.

*Binding*  
p. 44

Bind together as shown in Fig. 13.

*Soldering*  
p. 38

Solder the joint to form a collar or bezel.

*Pickling*

Clean in pickle.

*Forming*

Place the bezel on a round mandrel.  
Tap lightly with wooden or rawhide mallet to  
form into a circle.



## PROCESSES

*Fitting  
the*

Warm the wax stone lifter sufficiently for it to adhere to the top center of the stone. See Question 13.

*Stone  
in the  
Bezel*

If the bezel is too large for the stone see Question 3.

If the bezel is too small to fit the stone see Question 4.

*Truing*

True the edges with a file or emery cloth.

## BEARING

*Measuring  
the  
Bezel*

Measure the inside circumference of the bezel to determine the length of the bearing; the width should be narrower than that of the bezel.

*Gauging  
Annealing*

Gauge the metal, sterling silver sheet 28-gauge. Anneal the metal.

*Pickling*

Clean in pickle.

*Making  
the*

Follow the directions given in making a round bezel.

*Bearing**Inserting  
the*

Insert the bearing in the bezel; leave enough of the bezel above the bearing to turn over the curve of the stone. The rim of the bearing must be parallel with the top rim of the bezel as shown in Fig. 56.

*Bearing  
in the  
Bezel**Binding*

Hold together with cotter pins as shown in Fig. 13.

*Soldering*

Place flux and small pieces of solder on the lower rim of the bezel and bearing.

Solder together.

PROCESSES	File the base of the bezel and bearing to true if necessary.
<i>Filing</i>	File the thickness of the upper edge which is to be hammered or burnished over the stone to 28-gauge.
<i>Cleaning</i>	Remove any scratches or excess solder with a file and scotch stone.
<i>Polishing</i>	Buff with a felt buffing wheel and tripoli.
p. 71	Polish with a cloth buffing wheel and rouge.
<i>Coloring</i>	Color in potassium sulphide solution.
p. 72	Remove excess color with whiting.
	Polish with a cloth buffing wheel.

## SQUARE MITERED BEZEL AND BEARING

A mitered bezel is used for square, oblong, or other angular stones. The mitered bezel, as its name indicates, is made of a strip of metal cut in sections which are fitted together to form the size and the shape of the stone to be set. The bearing required for

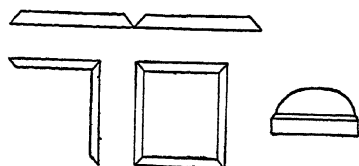


Fig. 58.—Square bezel, bearing, and cabochon stone

this setting may be made from a strip of metal scored and bent to fit inside the bezel or it may be formed of pieces mitered together the same way the bezel was made.

*Type*                      Square cabochon stone.  
*of*  
*Stone*

## PROCESSES

## BEZEL

*Measuring  
the  
Circumference  
of the  
Stone*  
p. 153

Measure one side of the stone at the girdle to determine the length to cut the strip for the bezel.

*Measuring  
the  
Depth  
of the  
Stone*  
p. 154

Measure with the dividers over the curve of the stone to determine the width of the strip for the bezel.

If the bezel is to be set on a curved surface see Question 10.

*Gauging*  
p. 346

Gauge the metal, sterling silver sheet 24-gauge.

*Annealing*  
p. 18

Anneal the metal.

*Pickling*  
p. 22

Clean in pickle.

*Laying  
out  
the  
Pattern*

Place the dividers over the straight edge of the 24-gauge metal.

Scratch a line on the metal, a little more than twice the length of one side.

*Sawing*  
p. 31

Saw two strips this measured length.

*Marking*  
*Scoring*

Scratch a line across the center of each strip.

File about  $\frac{7}{8}$  inch through the silver with the corner of the square file; keep the angle of the file straight.

*Bending*

Bend each piece of silver at a right angle at the filed angle.

## PROCESSES

*Soldering*

p. 38

Solder the seams.

*Measuring*

Place one section just soldered around two sides of the stone.

Measure diagonally across the stone from corner to corner.

Mark the silver at this angle.

Repeat with the second section.

*Sawing*

Saw the silver on the marked line.

*Fitting*

Place the two sections together to form a frame to fit around the stone.

Remove the stone.

File the ends of each bent piece to make an even joint.

*Holding*

Place the two sections on the charcoal block.

Hold to the charcoal block with staples made of binding wire as shown in Fig. 12.

*Soldering*

Solder the mitered joints.

*Pickling*

Clean in pickle.

p. 22

*Fitting*

Fit the stone in the bezel.

Warm the wax stone-lifter sufficiently for it to adhere to the top center of the stone and hold it in position for repeated fittings. See Question 13.

If the bezel is too large for the stone see Question 3.

If the bezel is too small for the stone see Question 5.

*Truing*

True the edges with a file and emery cloth.

## PROCESSES

## BEARING

*Measuring  
the  
Bezel*

Measure the inside circumference of the bezel to determine the length of the bearing. The width should be narrower than that of the bezel.

*Gauging  
Annealing*

Gauge the metal, sterling silver sheet 28-gauge.  
Anneal the metal.

*Pickling*

Clean in pickle.

*Making  
the  
Bearing*

Follow the directions given in making a square mitered bezel.

*Inserting  
the  
Bearing  
in the  
Bezel*

Insert the bearing in the bezel and leave enough of the bezel above the bearing to turn over the curve of the stone. The rim of the bearing must be parallel with the rim of the bezel.

*Binding*

Hold together with cotter pins as shown in Fig. 13.

*Soldering*

Place flux and solder on the lower rim of the bezel and bearing.  
Solder together.

*Filing  
p. 25*

File the base of the bezel and the bearing to true, if necessary.  
File the thickness of the upper edge of the bezel which is to be hammered or burnished over the stone to 28-gauge.

*Cleaning  
p. 70*

Remove scratches and excess solder with a file and scotch stone.

*Polishing  
p. 71*

Buff with a felt buffing wheel and tripoli.  
Polish with a cloth or chamois buffing wheel and rouge.

PROCESSES	Color in potassium sulphide solution.
<i>Coloring</i>	Remove excess color with whiting.
p. 72	Polish with a soft cloth buffing wheel.

### CLAW OR CROWN BEZEL AND BEARING

A claw or crown setting is made in the form of a frustum of a hollow cone as shown in Fig. 60, to fit the stone. After the number of prongs has been determined they are made by sawing or filing the sections to form, usually of uniform size or shape and long enough to be burnished over the stone to hold it in place.



Fig. 59.—Crown setting pierced,  
carved bearing, faceted stone

The bearing for this type of setting may be carved in the bezel or set in. The bezel may be carved, pierced, or sawed if the design requires this decoration.

<i>Type of Stone</i>	Round brilliant cut.
------------------------------	----------------------

#### PROCESSES

#### BEZEL

<i>Measuring the Circumference of the Stone</i>	Measure the circumference of the stone at the girdle as shown in Fig. 57.
<i>Measuring the Depth of the Stone</i>	Measure the stone from the base or point over the girdle of the stone.
<i>Gauging p. 346</i>	Gauge the metal, sterling silver sheet 16- or 18-gauge.

## PROCESSES

*Annealing*

Anneal the metal.

p. 18

*Pickling*

Clean in pickle.

p. 22

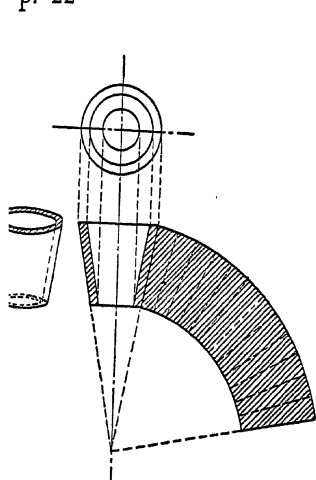


Fig. 60.—Pattern for a frustum of a hollow cone

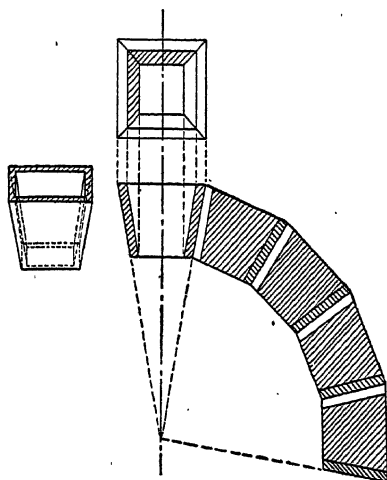


Fig. 60.—Pattern for a frustum of a hollow pyramid

*Laying**out**the**Pattern*

Lay out the frustum of a hollow cone as shown in Fig. 60.

When the pattern has been sawed, soldered, and shaped it should fit the girdle of the stone.

*Transferring**the**Design*

Transfer the pattern to the metal. Use the wax method.

p. 33

*Sawing*

Saw to pattern.

*Bending*

Bend so the two ends meet.

*Filing*

File to make an even joint.

## PROCESSES

*Binding* Bind firmly together as shown in Fig. 13.

*Soldering* Solder the joint.

p. 38

*Pickling* Clean in pickle.

*Polishing* Buff with a felt buffing wheel and tripoli.

p. 71

## BEARING

*Carving the Bearing* Carve the bearing for the girdle of the stone to rest upon. It should be carved far enough from the top rim of the bezel to leave enough metal to turn over the stone.

p. 87

## PRONGS

*Transferring the Design* Paint the metal with shellac alcohol dye solution.

Block the prongs and the design with the scratch awl.

p. 36

*Filing* File the metal between the blocked prongs. File the end of the prongs a lighter gauge.

*Carving* Carve the prongs to hold the stone. The bezel may be ornamented by sawing, piercing, carving, and by appliqué.

*Cleaning* Remove any scratches with a file and scotch stone.

p. 70

*Polishing* Buff with a felt buffing wheel and tripoli. Polish with a cloth buffing wheel and rouge.

p. 71

*Coloring* Color with potassium sulphide solution. Remove excess color with whiting.

p. 72

Polish with a chamois buffing wheel.



## PAVED OR GYPSY SETTING

The paved setting, or gypsy setting, as this type of setting is sometimes called, is carved into the metal to form a recess the exact size of the girdle of the stone and to form the base on which it is to rest. This type of setting necessitates enough metal above the bearing to be tapped and burnished over the stone to hold it in place. The thickness of the upper edge of a gypsy setting is usually somewhat great and should be filed at an angle so that the burnished edge will mold over it and blend with the surfaces of the stone.

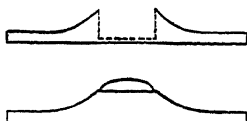


Fig. 62.—Paved setting, carved bearing, and cabochon stone

Type of Stone                      Round cabochon stone.

## PROCESSES

## SETTING

*Gauging*  
p. 346

Gauge the metal, sterling silver sheet 10-gauge or heavier.

The gauge must be thick enough to leave enough metal above the bearing to tap over the curve of the stone.

*Transferring the Pattern*  
p. 33

Transfer the pattern to the metal. Use the wax method.

*Sawing*  
p. 31

Saw to pattern.

*Annealing*  
p. 18

Anneal the metal.

*Pickling*  
p. 22

Clean in pickle.

*Shaping*

Shape the article before carving the setting.

## PROCESSES

*Holding*

Place the metal to be carved in the shellac stick, ring clamp, or hand vise, or any other tool which will hold the article firmly during the carving process.

*Transferring**the**Size**of the**Girdle**of the**Stone**on the**Metal*

Place the stone on the metal.

Scratch the exact size of the girdle of the stone on the metal to be carved.

*Carving**the**Box**for the**Setting**p. 87*

Carve just below the surface of the metal on the line just scratched with an onglette graver.

Remove the metal from the inside of the box with the flat graver; let the graver meet the first carved line so as to chip off the metal.

Make the first line of the outline deeper.

Remove the metal with the flat graver as before. Continue the above until the required depth of the box has been reached.

*Filing**p. 25*

File away the metal around the box at an angle; keep the original depth of the metal around the top of the box as shown in Fig. 62.

*Note:* The box may be open under the stone by piercing the metal, leaving a ledge for the stone to rest upon.

*Cleaning**p. 70*

Remove any scratches with a file and scotch stone.

*Polishing**p. 71*

Buff with a felt buffing wheel and tripoli.

Polish with a cloth buffing wheel and rouge.

## PROCESSES

*Coloring*

p. 72

Color with potassium sulphide solution.

Remove excess color with whiting.

Polish with a chamois buffing wheel.

## SETTING THE STONES

Stones are set after the article has been colored and buffed.

The edge of the bezel is then tapped or burnished over the stone to hold it in place.

*Holding  
the  
Article*

Hold the article on a shellac stick or in ring clamp, depending upon the size and the shape of the article.

Place the tool selected to hold the article in the jaws of the table vise.

*Setting  
the  
Stone*

Place the stone in the set with the stone lifter; be sure the girdle of the stone rests on the bearing.

Tap the metal around and over the stone with a small repoussé tool and chasing hammer as shown in Fig. 55.

Smooth with a file or graver.

Burnish the metal thus hammered with a burnisher.

Remove the article from the tool which holds it; if held in a shellac stick see Question 14.

*Setting  
Small  
Stones*

Small stones may be set by pushing the bezel over with the pusher and finishing with a burnisher.

*Finishing*

Remove any marks left by the setting tool.

Retouch with a small brush and color.

Rub with a chamois cloth or buffing wheel for the final polish. A burnisher may also be used.

## FORMS FOR HOLDING THE BEZELS

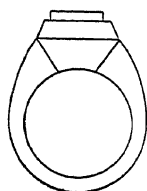
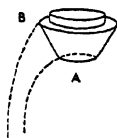
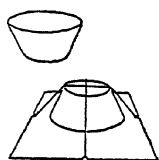
FRUSTUM OF A CONE, PYRAMID,  
AND WIRE GALLERY

Fig. 63.—Frustum of  
a hollow cone hold-  
ing a bezel

## Frustum of a hollow cone

Sterling silver sheet 20-gauge.

Lay out and saw a form as shown in Fig. 60.

Solder the joint and shape.

Sterling silver sheet 22-gauge.

Solder the large opening to silver sheet.

Saw and file the edges even.

Bind and solder the bezel on the covered  
end of the cone.

File the base as shown at A.

Fit and solder to the shank as shown at B.

Two cones may be made and soldered to-  
gether.

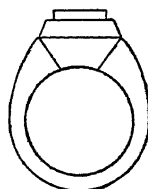
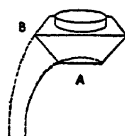
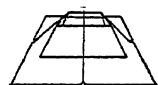


Fig. 64.—Frustum of  
a hollow pyramid  
holding a bezel

## Frustum of a hollow pyramid

Sterling silver sheet 18-gauge.

Lay out and saw a form as shown in Fig. 61.

File and bend on the angles as shown in  
Fig. 58.

Solder the joint.

Sterling silver sheet 20-gauge.

Solder the large opening to the silver sheet.

Saw and file the edges even.

Bind and solder the bezel to the flat surface.

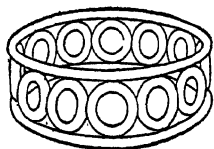
File the base as shown at A.

Fit and solder as shown at B.

Two pyramids may be soldered together.

## Gallery

Make two rings.



Solder the joints and shape into a circle.



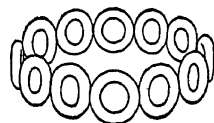
Make the desired number of small rings to fit the circumference of the large ring.



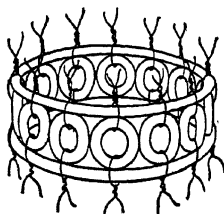
Solder the small rings into a band as shown in Fig. 77.



Bend the band so the two end rings meet.

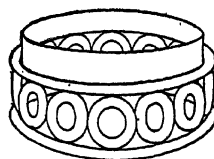


Bind and solder.



Shape the band into a circle.

Bind and solder to the two rings.



Solder the bezel to the gallery.

*Fig. 65.—Wire gallery holding a bezel*

## QUESTIONS

1. *Can the girdle of a stone with a curved contour be measured with any other tool than the dentimetre?*

A piece of binding wire doubled, held and twisted with snub nose pliers, or a strip of paper may also be used to measure around the stone.

2. *When the bezel is made of 18-gauge or heavier, is the strip of metal cut longer than the circumference of the girdle of the stone?*

Bezels made of 18-gauge or heavier are cut the length of the circumference of the stone plus the thickness of the metal.

3. *Is it possible to make the bezel smaller if it is found to be too large for the stone after it has been soldered and shaped?*

Measure the bezel and cut out the excess metal at the joint, solder, and shape.

4. *If the bezel is too small to fit the stone is it possible to enlarge it?*

The bezel can be made larger by slipping it on the steel mandrel and tapping it lightly with a steel hammer. If it is hammered on a tapered mandrel it should be reversed at intervals so that it will stretch evenly on both edges. If it has to be stretched much it should be annealed.

5. *Is it possible to enlarge a mitered bezel?*

Slip the bezel on a flat mandrel. Tap the bezel with a steel hammer, taking care to tap all sides evenly.

6. *What gauge metal is used for small bezels?*

28-gauge metal is used for a round or mitered bezel.

7. *Is sterling or fine silver used for very small bezels?*

Fine silver is used.

8. *Can several bezels be made the same size at the same time?*

Metal can be formed into a tube, soldered, and cut the

desired width for a round bezel. A mitered bezel may be made wider than desired and sawed into sections the desired width.

9. *Should the piece be cleaned, buffed, and colored before the stone is set?*

Scratches and solder should be removed and the piece polished and colored before the stone is set to avoid scratching or discoloring the stone.

10. *How is a bezel made to fit a curved surface?*

The pattern for the bezel must be wide enough to allow for filing the base the contour of the curve. The bezel must touch at all points.

11. *If the bezel has a backing of metal should it be pierced under the stone?*

If the stone is transparent or translucent the metal should be pierced under the stone. Sometimes it is pierced to reduce the weight of the article.

12. *When should the piercing be done?*

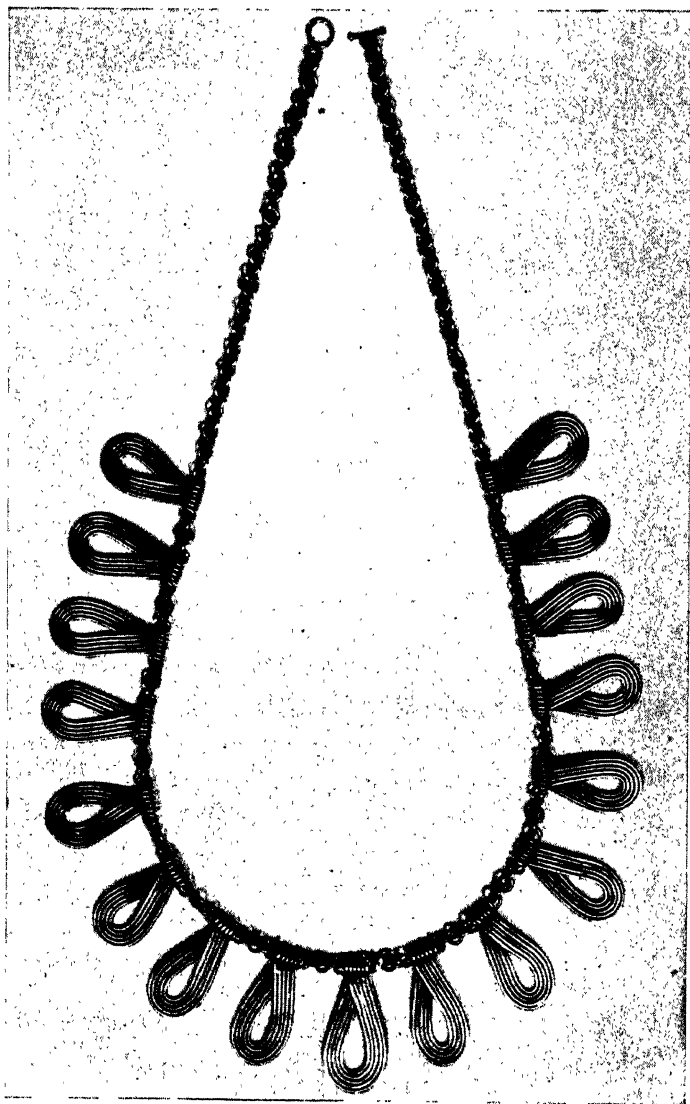
It should be pierced after the article has been shaped and the bezel soldered in place.

13. *What tool is used to pick up the stone when fitting it in the bezel?*

A stone lifter is used which is made by heating and modeling a small piece of dental sticky wax on a stick. Warm the wax slightly and press firmly on the top center of the stone.

14. *How can the article be removed from the shellac after the stone has been set?*

The shellac can be warmed slightly and the article lifted from the shellac stick.



*Necklace of coiled wire and looped wire units*



## IV. JEWELRY MAKING

## Finger Rings

- Ring with Double Knot
- Ring with Square Knot, Wire, and Balls
- Ring with Decorated Flat Ornament
- Ring with Decorated Domed Ornament, Wire, and Balls
- Ring with Round Stone, Wire, and Sawed Units
- Ring with Round Stones, Rings, and Domes
- Ring with Round Stone, Built-up Dome
- Ring with Oblong Stone, Metal Plate, and Wire Units
- Ring with Three Stones and Carved Design
- Ring with Round Stone and Carved Design

## Brooches and Clips

- Brooch Pierced and Decorated with Wire and Balls
- Brooch Built Up with Metal Units
- Clip with Stone, Wire, and Balls

## Bracelets

- Bracelet of Twisted Wire
- Bracelet Band with Applied Wire Units

## Chains

- Chain of Round and Oval Links
- Chain of Interwoven Links
- Chain of Flat Coiled Units
- Round Coiled Units and Oval Links

## Clasps

- Clasp—Ring Socket and Swivel Catch
- Clasp—Tube Socket and Spring Catch
- Clasp—Square and Oblong Sockets and Spring Catch

## Beads

- Open Work Bead of Wire Units and Balls
- Round Bead Decorated with Wire and Domes
- Oval Bead Decorated with Wire and Balls

---

# JEWELRY MAKING

---

Jewelry consists mainly of four principal articles: rings, brooches, bracelets, and chains. No matter what the prevailing mode of dress may be these articles of jewelry are worn. From the standpoint of jewelry construction and, to some extent, design, these four articles are important because they involve basic processes of construction which are used in all forms of jewelry work.

Modern tools and equipment have brought about simplification of certain processes and improvement in others but the basic processes used in making jewelry have been essentially the same since early historic days. Since the essential tools and materials can be secured at low cost the fabrication of articles from such metals as gold and silver easily comes within the reach of creative craft work for beginners.

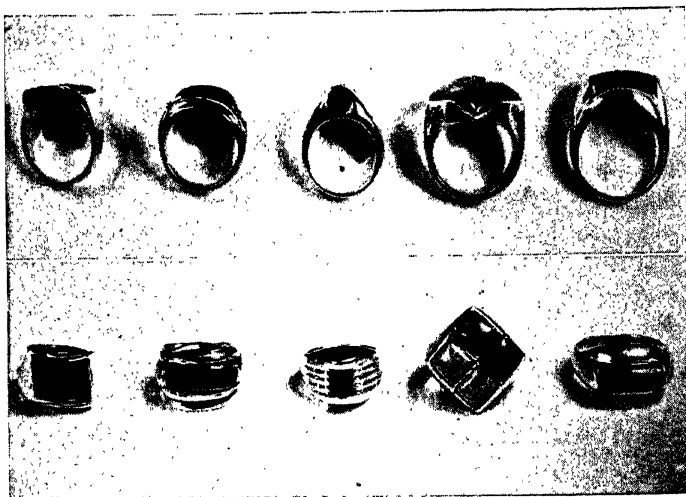
Design in jewelry is always important, since much of the beauty of an article is determined by the form, proportion, balance, unity, harmony, and repetition of line and mass. Craftsmanship, however, is often the key to a beautiful design because workmanship not only creates texture which is essential to the beauty of the article, but quite frequently it is the only way to bring out the details of a well-developed design. A good craftsman knows that good workmanship, in itself, is a thing of beauty.

In order to carry through a piece of work from the design to the completed article the worker must follow through a series of processes in order. A beginner may find it necessary to write out the directions at first but later, as he advances, he should learn how to keep his working plan and order of processes in mind. In this event only a few notes and sketches need be used as reminders.

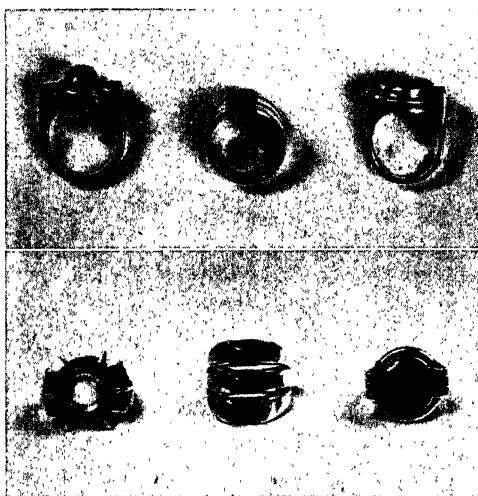
The following problems are presented in the form of work sheets to show the order in which the various parts of the work are

done and to indicate the relation of one part to another and one process to another. Directions must be read through and sequence and procedure carefully noted. Procedure is memorized after several articles have been made. Learning to follow oral and written directions cannot be emphasized too strongly because it is only in this way that the worker can learn to anticipate what comes next. As the beginner comes to understand the various procedures he can outline the work to be done on any piece of jewelry he is capable of undertaking.

---



*Cast rings, set with black onyx, turquoise, and jade*



*Silver rings with black onyx settings*

---

## FINGER RINGS

---

Finger rings are made up of two parts, the shank which is the band that fits around the finger, and the ornament which is applied to the shank for decoration.

The shank may be made of wire as shown in Figs. 66, 67, 68, 69, and 70, or it may be sawed or cut to pattern from flat metal as shown in Figs. 72, 73, 77, 78, 79, 80, 81, and 82. Metal cast in a mold as shown in Figs. 83, 84, and 85 is another method used to form a ring shank. The type of shank is determined by the size and design of the ornament to be used.

Ornaments vary considerably in type. A solid decoration as shown in Figs. 69 and 70 may be made entirely of metal or of metal and stones combined. A stone set in a collar or bezel which forms a box setting is shown in Figs. 72, 73, 77, 78, 79, and 80. Still another form of setting is a stone set between wires with metal bands on two sides as shown in Figs. 81 and 82. Another setting which makes a very attractive frame for a stone is the paved or gypsy setting which is shown in Figs. 83, 84, and 85.

Several important principles govern the design of any ring: (1) the size of the band in relation to the size of the ornament must be proportional; (2) the finished ring must be a single unit of design; (3) the ornament must be short enough from top to bottom to allow the finger knuckle to bend with ease, and (4) the raised part of the ornament, if it extends around the curve of the shank, must be short enough to insure comfort when worn.

Other methods of forming shanks and setting stones in rings may be used but these are the types most commonly used. A beginner who can execute pieces of jewelry successfully by these methods can work out other ways of forming shanks and setting stones as they suggest themselves.

## RING DESIGN



## CONSTRUCTION

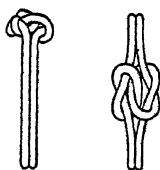
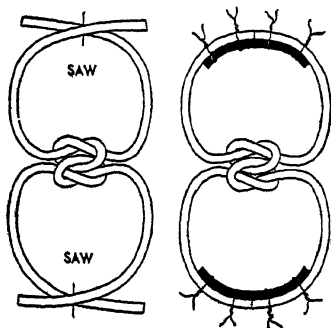


Fig. 66.—Wire shank with double knot

## RING WITH DOUBLE KNOT

Shank—Wire rings.

Ornament—Knotted wires.

Sterling silver wire annealed  
14-gauge.

Cut two 4-inch lengths.

Make a loose knot in the center  
of one length.

Insert the other 4-inch length  
of wire through the knot.

Knot the inserted piece.

Pull the loose ends to tighten  
the knots.

Shape the wires around the ring  
mandrel the desired size.

Saw the wire at the point where  
they overlap.

Bind each ring.

Solder the joints.

True on the mandrel.

Clean, polish, and color.

## RING WITH DOUBLE KNOT

Fig. 66

<i>Type of Ring</i>	Shank—Wire bands. Ornament — knotted wires. The following wire is required: Sterling silver wire 14-gauge.	
<i>Tools and Working Materials</i>	Metal gauge	File
	Charcoal block	Flux
	Gas and air blow torch	Borax slate or saucer
	Pickle	Solder
	Copper pickle pan	Camel's hair brush
	Copper tongs	Scotch stone
	Gas plate	Polishing motor
	Jeweler's shears	Felt buffing wheel
	Table vise	Tripoli cake
	Snub nose pliers	Soda, ammonia, and water solution
	Jeweler's hand vise	
	Ring sizes	Granite pan
	Ring gauge	Chamois buffing wheel
	Ring mandrel	Rouge stick
	Mallet	Potassium sulphide so- lution
	Bench pin	
	Jeweler's saw frame	Whiting
	Jeweler's saw blade	Cloth buffing wheel

## PROCESSES

## RING SHANK

*Gauging*  
*Annealing*  
 p. 18  
*Cutting*  
*Knotting*

Gauge the wire, sterling silver 14-gauge.  
 Anneal the wire.

Cut the wire in two 4-inch lengths.  
 Make a loose knot in the center of one wire.  
 Place the end in the jaws of the table vise.  
 Hold the other end with the jeweler's hand vise.  
 Give the wire an even pull.

## PROCESSES

*Knotting*

Keep the knot in the center of the wire by reversing the ends held in the table vise; continue until a loose knot has been formed in the center of the wire.

Insert the other length of wire through the knot.

Knot the inserted wire as described above; the knot must be left open to let the wires swivel.

*Measuring**the**Finger*

Measure the finger for size.

*Shaping*

Shape the wires around the ring mandrel the desired size.

Tap lightly with a mallet.

*Sawing*

p. 31

Saw the wires where they overlap.

*Binding*

Bind the wires to make even joints as shown in Fig. 66.

*Soldering*

p. 38

Solder the joints.

*Truing**the**Rings*

Place the rings on the mandrel.

Tap with a mallet to true.

*Cleaning*

p. 70

Remove any excess solder with a file and scotch stone.

*Polishing*

Buff the joints with a felt buffing wheel and tripoli.

Polish with a chamois buffing wheel and rouge.

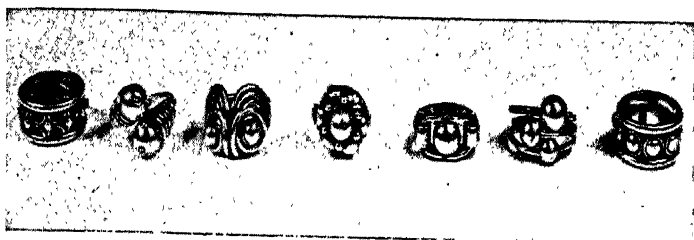
*Coloring*

Color with potassium sulphide solution.

Remove any excess color with whiting.

Polish with a soft cloth buffing wheel.





*Silver rings of wire decorated with domes, balls, beads, and coils*

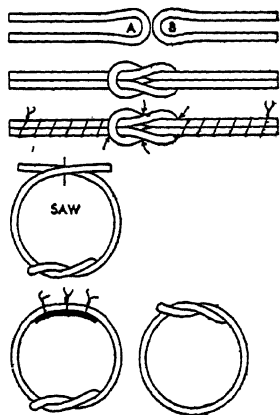


*Built-up rings of silver with black onyx settings*

## RING DESIGN



## RING SHANK



## ORNAMENT

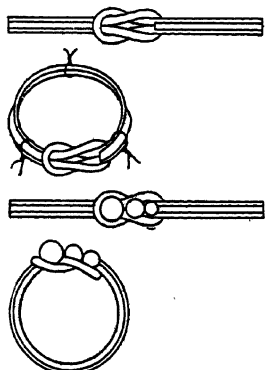
JOINING THE ORNAMENT  
AND THE FOUNDATION

Fig. 67.—Wire shank with square knot, wire, and balls

RING WITH SQUARE KNOT,  
WIRE, AND BALLS

Shank—Wire rings.

Ornament—Knot, wire band, and balls.

Shank—Sterling silver wire annealed 14-gauge.

Cut two 4-inch lengths.

Loop each length in the center A and B.

Insert the ends of loop A through loop B and the ends of loop B through loop A.

Pull the ends to tighten the loops.

Bind and solder together.

Shape the wires around the ring mandrel the desired size.

Saw the wires at the center back.

Bind and solder together.

## Ornament

Fine silver wire.

Make three graduated balls.

Sterling silver wire 14-gauge, drawn half round.

Cut  $1\frac{1}{2}$ -inch length.

## Joining the Ornament and Foundation

Bind and solder the wire to the shank to end under one loop and over the other loop.

Solder the three balls in the loops.

Clean, polish, and color.

RING WITH SQUARE KNOT, WIRE,  
AND BALLS

Fig. 67

*Type  
of  
Ring*

Shank—Two wire rings.

Ornament—Square knot, band, and balls.

The following wire is required:

Sterling silver wire annealed 14-gauge for the shank.

Sterling silver wire 14-gauge, drawn half round, for the band on the shank.

Fine silver wire for the balls.

*Tools  
and  
Working  
Materials*

Metal gauge	Ring mandrel
Ruler	Rawhide mallet
Charcoal block	Bench pin
Gas and air blow torch	Jeweler's saw frame
Emery cloth	Jeweler's saw blade
Jeweler's shears	#1/0
Round nose pliers	Binding wire
Bench vise	14-gauge flat
Jeweler's hand vise	Binding wire
Binding wire	26-gauge
24-gauge	Powdered borax
Flux	Round graded man-
Borax slate or saucer	drels
Solder	Steel tweezers
Small camel's hair	Half round hole draw
brush	plate
Pickle	Draw tongs
Copper pickle pan	Yellow beeswax
Copper tongs	File
Gas plate	File card
Ring sizes	Scotch stone
Ring gauge	Polishing motor

<i>Tools</i>	Felt buffing wheel	Chamois buffing wheel
<i>and</i>	Tripoli cake	Potassium sulphide so-
<i>Working</i>	Soda, ammonia, and	lution
<i>Materials</i>	water solution	Whiting
	Granite pan	Soft cloth or chamois
	Rouge stick	buffing wheel

## PROCESSES

## RING SHANK

<i>Gauging</i> p. 346	Gauge the wire, sterling silver wire 14-gauge.
<i>Annealing</i> p. 18	Anneal the wire.
<i>Cutting</i>	Cut the wire in two 4-inch lengths.
<i>Looping</i>	Loop each of the two pieces of wire in the center.
	Curve each wire slightly.
<i>Inserting</i>	Bring the ends of each loop together. Insert the two ends at A through the loop B. Insert the two ends at B through the loop A.
<i>Holding</i>	Place the ends of B in the jaws of the bench vise. Hold the ends of A with draw pliers or the jeweler's hand vise.
<i>Tightening</i> <i>the</i> <i>Knots</i>	Pull the wires until the loop is tight. The wire ends may have to be reversed, the ends of A held in the bench vise and the ends of B pulled to keep the loop knotted in the center of the wires.
<i>Binding</i>	Bind the wires together.
<i>Soldering</i> p. 38	Solder the wires.
<i>Measuring the</i> <i>Finger</i>	Measure the finger for size.

## PROCESSES

*Shaping*

Place the wires on the ring mandrel.  
Strike the knot with a rawhide mallet.  
Shape around the mandrel the desired size.

*Sawing*

p. 31

Saw the wire ends where A overlaps B at the center back.

*Binding*

Bind the wires together to form an even joint.

*Soldering*

Solder the joint.

*Truing*

Place on the ring mandrel.

Tap with a rawhide mallet to true.

## ORNAMENT

*Ball*

Fine silver wire.

*Making*

p. 122

Make three graduated balls.

*Wire*

Sterling silver wire 14-gauge.

*Drawing*

p. 96

Draw the wire half round.

JOINING THE RING SHANK AND  
THE ORNAMENT*Binding*

Bind the wire to the shank; let the ends finish over one loop and under the other loop.

*Soldering*

Solder the wire and balls in place.

*Cleaning*

p. 70

Remove any excess solder with a file and scotch stone.

*Polishing*

p. 71

Buff with a felt buffing wheel and tripoli.

Use the bristle buffing wheel for recessed parts.  
Polish with a soft cloth or chamois buffing wheel and rouge.

*Coloring*

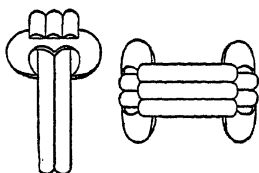
p. 72

Dip in potassium sulphide solution.

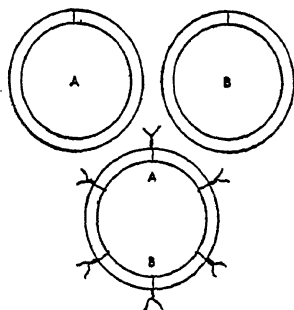
Remove any excess color with whiting.

Polish with a soft cloth or chamois buffing wheel.

## RING DESIGN



## RING SHANK



## ORNAMENT

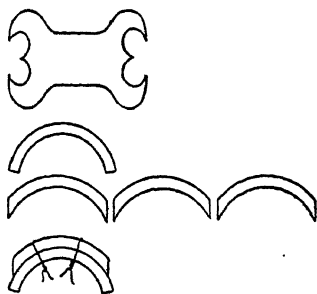
JOINING RING SHANK  
AND THE ORNAMENT

Fig. 68.—Wire shank with decorated flat ornament

RING WITH DECORATED  
FLAT ORNAMENT

Shank—Wire rings.

Ornament—Sawed unit with applied wire bands.

Shank—Sterling silver wire half round annealed 10-gauge.

Make two rings A and B.

Solder the joints.

Shape round.

Bind and solder A and B together.

Clean and polish.

Ornament—Sterling silver sheet 16-gauge.

Saw to pattern.

Sterling silver wire 10-gauge drawn half round.

Saw three pieces of equal length.

File the ends of the wires.

Bind and solder together.

Shape the sawed unit and wire to fit the contour of the shank.

File the wire ends true.

Bind and solder the wire unit on the sawed unit.

Joining the Ring Shank and the Ornament

Bind the joint of the ring underneath the ornament.

Solder in place.

Clean, polish, and color.

RING WITH DECORATED FLAT  
ORNAMENT

Fig. 68

*Type  
of  
Ring*

Shank—Wire rings.

Ornament—Flat unit with bands of wire.

The following wire and flat metal are required:

Sterling silver wire 10-gauge drawn half round for the shank and ornament.

Sterling silver sheet 16-gauge for the base of the ornament.

*Tools  
and  
Working  
Materials*

Ring sizes	Copper tongs
Ring gauge	Gas plate
Metal gauge	Ring mandrel
Charcoal block	Mallet
Blow torch	Scotch stone
Emery cloth	Polishing motor
Flat file	Felt buffing wheel
Bench vise	Felt ring buff
Half round hole draw plate	Tripoli cake
Yellow beeswax	Soda, ammonia, and water solution
Draw tongs	Granite pan
Bench pin	Tracing paper
Jeweler's saw frame	Scratch awl
Jeweler's saw blade	White beeswax
Snub nose pliers	Forming blocks
Binding wire	Bristle buffing wheel
Flux	Chamois buffing wheel
Borax slate or saucer	Rouge stick
Solder	Potassium sulphide solution
Jeweler's shears	Whiting
Camel's hair brush	Cloth buffing wheel
Pickle	
Copper pickle pan	

## PROCESSES

## RING SHANK

*Measuring  
the  
Finger*

Measure the finger for size.

*Gauging  
the Metal*  
p. 346

Gauge the metal sheet and wire.

*Annealing*  
p. 18

Anneal the wire.

*Drawing  
the  
Wire*

Draw the 10-gauge wire through the half round hole draw plate.

p. 96  
*Sawing*  
p. 31

Saw two pieces of wire the measured length.

*Bending*

Bend A so the two ends of the wire meet.  
Repeat with B.

*Fitting*

Saw through the joints to insure a perfect fit.

*Binding*

Bind each ring as shown in Fig. 67.

*Soldering*  
p. 38

Solder the joints.

*Shaping*

Shape A on the ring mandrel; tap lightly with a mallet to form a perfect circle.  
Repeat with ring B.

*Binding*

Bind A to B firmly.

*Soldering*

Solder A and B together.

*Cleaning*  
p. 70

Remove excess solder with a file and scotch stone.

*Polishing*  
p. 71

Polish with a felt and bristle buffing wheel and tripoli for the outside and a felt ring buff for the inside.



## PROCESSES

## ORNAMENT

*Transferring  
the*

Sterling silver sheet 16-gauge.

*Pattern*

Transfer the pattern for the sawed unit to the metal.

*Sawing*

Saw the metal to pattern.

*Annealing*

Anneal the metal.

*Sawing*

Sterling silver wire half round 10-gauge.

Saw three pieces of wire to fit the sawed unit.

*Filing*

File the ends of the wires at an angle.

*Binding*

Bind the three wires firmly together.

*Soldering*

Solder the wires on the flat side.

*Shaping*

Shape the sawed unit in the forming block to the contour of the shank as shown in Fig. 75.

Shape the wire unit in the wooden forming block as shown in Fig. 74 to fit the contour of the sawed unit.

*Filing*

File the ends of the wires to true.

*Binding*

Bind the wire unit to the sawed unit.

*Soldering*

Solder together.

JOINING THE RING SHANK AND  
ORNAMENT*Binding*

Bind the joint of the ring shank under the center of the ornament.

*Soldering*

Solder points of contact.

*Cleaning*

Remove excess solder.

*Polishing*

Buff with a bristle buffing wheel and tripoli.

Polish with a chamois buffing wheel.

*Coloring*

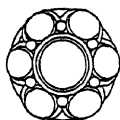
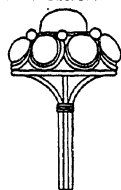
Color with potassium sulphide solution.

p. 72

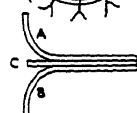
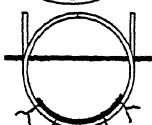
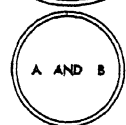
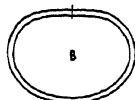
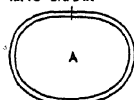
Remove any excess color with whiting.

Polish with a soft cloth buffing wheel.

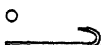
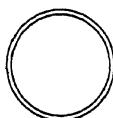
## RING DESIGN



## RING SHANK



## ORNAMENT

RING WITH DECORATED  
DOMED ORNAMENT,  
WIRE, AND BALLS

Shank—Wire bands.

Ornament—Domes, rings, and balls.

Shank—Sterling silver wire annealed 18-gauge.

Saw three lengths, A, B, and C.

Bend and solder A and B.

Shape A, B and C.

Bind A, B, and C together.

Insert binding wire between A, B and C; solder together.

Curve A and B.

Ornament—Sterling silver sheet annealed 26-gauge.

Cut and dome one large disk the diameter of the spread A-B.

Cut and dome six small disks.

Sterling silver wire 18-gauge.

Make one ring the diameter of the large dome.

Fine silver wire 20-gauge.

Make six rings the diameter of the small dome and one ring twice the diameter.

Solder the joints.

Fine silver wire 26-gauge.

Make six half rings.

Make one ball to fit the medium size ring, and six small balls.

Fine silver wire 22-gauge.

Make two hooks with wire ends.

Fig. 69.—Wire shank with decorated domed ornament

### Assembling Parts of the Ornament

Bind and solder the large dome on the large ring.

Solder the six small rings around the medium size ring to form a motif.

Dome the motif to fit the large dome.

Bind and solder the dome of rings to the large dome.

Pierce the large dome inside the center ring.

Drill air holes in the large dome inside the six rings.

File grooves in the center ring between the small rings.

Solder the large ball in the center opening.

Solder the balls in the grooves and the domes on the rings.

Solder the half rings in place.

### Joining the Ring Shank and the Ornament

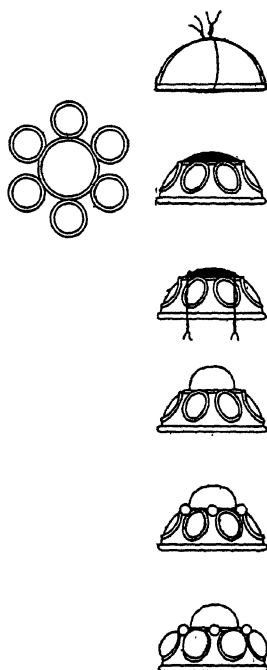
Bind and solder A, B, and C under the ring of the ornament.

Place the hook of wire over the shank at the spread and coil three times.

Solder in place.

Clean, polish, and color.

### ASSEMBLING PARTS OF THE ORNAMENT



### JOINING RING SHANK AND THE ORNAMENT

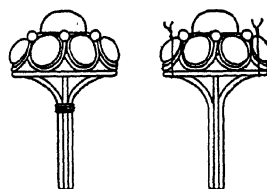


Fig. 70.—Wire shank with decorated domed ornament

RING WITH DECORATED DOMED  
ORNAMENT, WIRE, AND BALLS

Figs. 69, 70

*Type  
of  
Ring*

Shank—Wire bands.

Ornament—Large dome mounted with small domes, rings, and balls.

The following metal sheet and wire are required:

Sterling silver wire 18-gauge for the shank and the ring to hold the large dome of the ornament.

Sterling silver sheet 26-gauge for the domes.

Fine silver wire 20-gauge for the rings around the large ball and small domes.

Fine silver wire 26-gauge for the half rings and balls.

Fine silver wire 22-gauge for the wires to bind the shank.

*Tools  
and  
Working  
Materials*

Ring sizes	Flux
Ring gauge	Borax slate or saucer
Metal gauge	Solder
Gas and air blow torch	Jeweler's shears
Charcoal block	Camel's hair brush
Pickle	Binding wire
Copper pickle pan	26-gauge
Copper tongs	Ring mandrel
Gas plate	Mallet
Ruler	Flat file
Bench pin	Scotch stone
Jeweler's saw frame	Polishing motor
Jeweler's saw blades	Felt buffing wheel
#1/0	Felt ring buff
Snub nose pliers	Tripoli cake

*Tools*  
*and*  
*Working*  
*Materials*

Soda, ammonia, and water solution	Center punch
Granite pan	Bristle buffing wheel
Lead dapping block	Riffle file
Dapping die cutters and punches	Graver
Dapping die	Oil stone
Round mandrels—2 sizes	Oil
Surface plate	Gum tragacanth
Tweezers	Chamois buffing wheel
Shellac stick	Rouge stick
Flake shellac	Potassium sulphide so- lution
Round nose pliers	Whiting
Alcohol	Soft cloth buffing wheel

PROCESSES

*Measuring*  
*the*  
*Finger*  
*Gauging*  
*the*  
*Metal*

p. 346

*Annealing*

p. 18

*Sawing*

p. 31

*Bending*

SEPARATE PARTS OF THE RING SHANK

Measure the finger for size.

Gauge the metal to be used.

Anneal the metal.

Sterling silver wire 18-gauge. Saw three lengths of wire A and B long enough to allow spread to hold the base of the large dome as shown in Fig. 69. C should be long enough to fit under the dome.

Bend A so the two ends meet.

Repeat with B.

## PROCESSES

*Fitting*

Saw through the joints formed by the meeting of the two ends to insure a perfect fit.

*Soldering*

Solder the joints.

p. 38

*Shaping*

Shape A and B on the ring mandrel.

Form C half round on the mandrel.

### ASSEMBLING PARTS OF THE RING SHANK

*Binding*

Bind A, B, and C together.

Curve A and B slightly outward.

Insert flat binding wire between the rings where they spread.

*Soldering*

Solder A, B, and C together.

*Cleaning*

Remove any excess solder with a file and scotch stone.

p. 70

*Polishing*

Buff with a felt buffing wheel and tripoli for the outside and the inside with a felt ring buff and tripoli.

p. 71

### SEPARATE PARTS OF THE ORNAMENT

*Disk*

Sterling silver sheet 26-gauge.

*Cutting  
and*

Cut one large disk the diameter of the spread between A and B with the dapping cutter. Saw if a larger cutter is not available.

*Doming*

Cut six small disks with the dapping cutter.

p. 120

Dome the disks in the dapping die.

*Ring*

Sterling silver wire 18-gauge.

*Making*

Make one ring the diameter of the large dome.

p. 112

Fine silver wire 20-gauge.

Make six rings the diameter of the small dome.

Make one ring twice the diameter of the small dome.

## PROCESSES

*Soldering*

Solder the joints.

*Truing*

Tap the rings lightly on a round mandrel and surface plate to true.

*Ring*

Fine silver wire 26-gauge.

*Making*

Make six half rings.

*Ball*

Make one large ball to fit the center ring.

*Making*

Make six small balls to fit between the domes.

p. 120

*Polishing*

Hold the large ball in a shellac stick.

p. 71

Polish with a felt buffing wheel and tripoli to make smooth.

*Cutting*

Fine silver wire 22-gauge.

Cut two lengths of wire  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches.

Make a small hook on the end of each with round nose pliers.

## ASSEMBLING PARTS OF THE ORNAMENT

*Binding*

Bind the large dome on the large ring.

*Soldering*

Solder in place.

Solder the six small rings around the medium sized ring to form a motif.

*Shaping  
the*

Dome the motif by pressing it in the dapping die to fit the large dome.

*Motif**Binding*

Bind the motif to the large dome.

*Soldering*

Solder together.

*Piercing*

Pierce the inside of the large dome inside the center ring.

p. 35

## PROCESSES

*Drilling*

p. 35

Drill small air holes in the large dome inside the six small rings.

*Cleaning*

Remove any excess solder with a file and scotch stone.

*Polishing*

Buff with a bristle buffing wheel and tripoli.

*Filing*

p. 25

File or carve a groove in the center ring between the six rings to hold the small balls; a small opening must be left under the balls.

*Soldering*

Solder the large ball in the center opening.

Solder the small balls in the groove.

Solder the domes on the rings.

*Filing*

File the ends of the half circles of wire to a point, place under ball and around the ring which holds the dome as shown in Figs. 70, 71.



Fig. 71.—Wire units in soldering position

*Binding*

Bind in place.

*Soldering*

Solder the wires.

## JOINING THE RING SHANK AND THE ORNAMENT

*Shaping*

Fit the shank to the dome so that the wires A, B, and C fit inside the wire ring at the base of the large dome.

*Binding*

Bind the dome to the shank.

*Soldering*

Solder together.

*Coiling*

Hook the 22-gauge wire on the shank where A and B spread on each side of the ornament; coil three times around the shank. Let the ends finish on the inside of the shank.



## PROCESSES

*Soldering*

Solder the coil to the shank.

*Filing*

File the wires smooth on the inside of the shank.

*Cleaning*

p. 70

Remove any scratches or excess solder with a file and scotch stone.

*Polishing*

p. 71

Buff with a bristle buffing wheel and tripoli.  
Polish with a cloth or chamois buffing wheel and rouge.

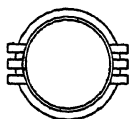
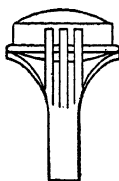
*Coloring*

p. 72

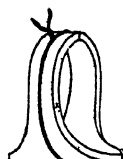
Color with potassium sulphide solution.  
Remove any excess color with whiting.  
Polish with a cloth or chamois buffing wheel.

---

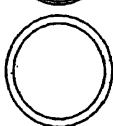
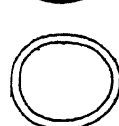
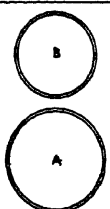
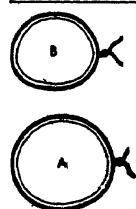
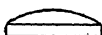
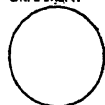
## RING DESIGN



## RING SHANK



## ORNAMENT

RING WITH ROUND  
STONE, WIRE, AND  
SAWED UNITS

Shank — Shaped band of silver.

Ornament — Round stone set, ring, and sawed units.  
Shank—Sterling silver sheet 12- or 14-gauge.

Saw to pattern.

Anneal the metal.

Bend so the ends meet.

Bind and solder.

Shape round.

Ornament—Sterling silver sheet 26-gauge.

Cut A for the bezel and B for the bearing.

Bend A so the two ends meet and repeat with B.

Solder the joints.

Shape round.

Solder B inside of A.

File the lower edge the contour of the shank.

Sterling silver wire 14-gauge.

Make a ring to fit the bezel.

Solder the joint.

Sterling silver sheet 12- or 14-gauge.

Saw six units to pattern.

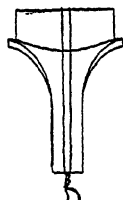
Fig. 72:—Shaped metal shank with round stone, wire, and sawed units

JOINING RING SHANK  
AND THE ORNAMENT

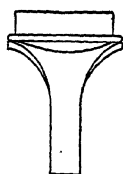
## Joining the Ring Shank and the Ornament

Bind and solder the bezel to the shank.

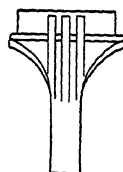
File the upper edge of the bezel to 28-gauge.



Solder the wire ring to the bezel to touch the shank at two points.



Place the three units on one side so as to touch the shank and bezel and to fit over the wire ring.

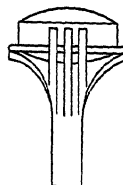


Solder in place.

Repeat on the other side with the other three units.

Clean, polish, and color.

Set the stone.



*Fig. 73. — Shaped metal shank with round stone, wire, and sawed units*

# RING WITH ROUND STONE, WIRE, AND SAWED UNITS

Figs. 72, 73

## Type of Ring

Shank—Shaped metal band.

Ornament—Round cabochon stone and applied silver units.

The following flat metal, wire, and stone set are required:

Sterling silver sheet 12- or 14-gauge for the shank and ornamental units.

Sterling silver sheet 26-gauge for the bezel and bearing.

Sterling silver wire 14-gauge for the ring around the bezel.

Stone—Round cabochon, black onyx.

## Tools and Working Materials

Ring sizes	Hand vise
Ring gauge	Charcoal block
Metal gauge	Pickle
Pumice powder	Copper pickle pan
Pencil	Copper tongs
Ruler	Gas plate
Tracing paper	Forming block
Blow torch	Ring mandrel
White beeswax	Mallet
Soft cloth	Jeweler's saw blade
Scratch awl	#3/0
Bench pin	Binding wire
Jeweler's saw frame	24-gauge
Jeweler's saw blade	Flux
#1/0	Borax slate or saucer
File	Solder
File card	Jeweler's shears

<i>Tools</i>	Small camel's hair	Wax
<i>and</i>	brush	Bristle buffing wheel
<i>Working</i>	Scotch stone	Potassium sulphide so-
<i>Materials</i>	Polishing motor	lution
	Tripoli cake	Whiting
	Felt buffing wheel	Cloth or chamois buf-
	Felt ring buff	ing wheel
	Soda, ammonia, and	Pusher
	water solution	Ring vise
	Granite pan	Repoussé tool
	Dentimetre	Chasing hammer
	Dividers	Burnisher
	Round mandrel	Soft cloth buffing
	Stone lifter	wheel

## PROCESSES

## RING SHANK

*Measuring  
the  
Finger*

Measure the finger for size.

*Gauging  
the  
Metal*  
p. 346

Gauge the metal to be used.

*Drawing  
the  
Pattern*

Draw the pattern for the shank; the size of the shank must be wide enough to carry the ornament.

*Transferring  
the  
Pattern  
to the  
Silver*  
p. 33

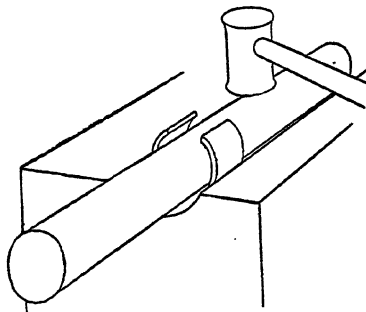
Sterling silver 12- or 14-gauge.  
Transfer the traced pattern to the silver; use the wax method.

## PROCESSES

*Sawing*

p. 31

Saw the metal following the scratched line of the pattern.



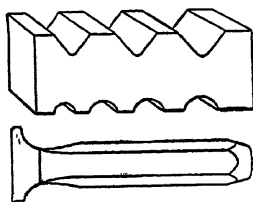
*Fig. 74.—Bending a ring blank in a wooden forming block*

*Annealing*

p. 18

*Bending*

Anneal the blank just sawed.



*Fig. 75.—Steel forming block*

Bend the blank in the forming block as shown in Figs. 74 and 75.

Bring the two ends together to form the shank as shown in Fig. 76.

*Fitting*

Saw through the joint formed by the meeting of the two ends with a 3/0 saw blade to insure a perfect fit.

*Binding**Soldering*

p. 38

*Shaping*

Bind the shank firmly.

Solder the joint.



Shape the shank on the ring mandrel.

Tap lightly with a mallet; re-

*Fig. 76 — Joining the ends of the blank*

## PROCESSES

verse several times on the tapered mandrel to form a perfect circle.

*Cleaning*  
p. 70

Remove any excess solder with a file and scotch stone.

*Polishing*  
p. 71

Buff the outside with a felt buffing wheel and tripoli, and the inside with a felt ring buff and tripoli.

## SEPARATE PARTS OF THE ORNAMENT

*Measuring  
the  
Girdle  
of the  
Stone*

Measure the girdle of the stone as shown in Fig. 57.

*Making  
a Round  
Bezel  
and  
Bearing*  
p. 153

Sterling silver sheet 26-gauge.  
Make a round bezel and bearing as shown in Fig. 72.

*Filing*  
p. 25

File the lower edge of the bezel the contour of the ring shank to touch at all points as shown in Fig. 72.

*Ring  
Making*  
p. 112

Sterling silver wire 14-gauge.  
Make a ring to fit the outside circumference of the bezel.

*Soldering*

Solder the joint.

PROCESSES  
*Transferring  
 the  
 Pattern,  
 for the  
 Units  
 to the Metal*

Sterling silver sheet 12- or 14-gauge. Transfer the pattern for the six units onto the silver; use the wax method.

*Sawing*  
 p. 31

Saw out the units.

*Filing*

File the edges.

### JOINING THE RING SHANK AND THE ORNAMENT

*Binding*

Bind the bezel to the shank.

*Soldering*

Solder together.

*Filing  
 the  
 Bezel*

File the upper edge of the bezel to about 28-gauge.

*Soldering*

Place the ring of wire around the bezel so that it touches the ring shank at two points.

Solder in place.

Place the three units on one side so as to touch the shank and bezel and to fit over the wire ring.

Solder in place.

Repeat on the other side of the shank with the other three units.

*Filing*

File to true.

*Cleaning*

Remove excess solder with a file and scotch stone.



## PROCESSES

*Polishing*

Buff with a felt buffing wheel and tripoli and a bristle buffing wheel and tripoli for recessed parts.

Polish with chamois buffing wheel and rouge.

*Coloring*

p. 72

Color with potassium sulphide solution.

Remove any excess color with whiting.

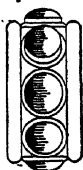
Polish with a soft cloth buffing wheel.

*Setting  
the**Stone*

p. 165

Set the stone.

## RING DESIGN

RING WITH ROUND STONES, RINGS, AND  
DOMES

Shank—Straight band of silver.

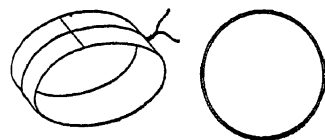
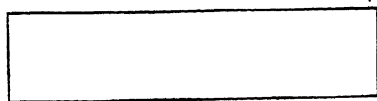
Ornament—Three stones, rings, and domes.

Shank—Sterling silver sheet annealed 22-gauge.

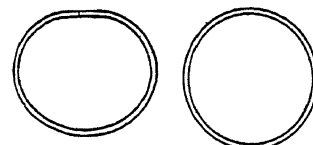
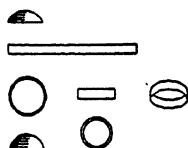
Saw to pattern.

Bend so ends meet.

## RING SHANK



## ORNAMENT



Bind and solder the joint.

Shape round.

Ornament—Fine silver sheet 28-gauge.

Make three bezels.

Fine silver wire 24-gauge.

Make three rings for bearings.

Sterling silver sheet annealed 26-gauge.

Cut and dome six disks the diameter of the bezel.

Fine silver wire 24-gauge.

Make nine rings the outside circumference of the bezel.

Solder the nine rings together.

Bend so the two end rings meet.

Bind and solder.

Sterling silver wire 10-gauge drawn half round.

Make two rings to fit the outside of the shank.

Solder the joints.

Shape the rings to fit the shank.

Fig. 77.—Straight metal shank with round stones, rings, and domes

## Joining the Ring Shank and the Ornament.

Bind and solder the band of rings to the center of the shank.

Clean and polish.

Place the two rings of half round wire on the shank to touch the band of rings.

Solder in place.

File the shank on both sides flush with the wire rings.

Place the six domes in the six consecutive rings on the shank.

Solder in place.

Place the three bezels in the three remaining rings, the bearings in the bezels.

Solder in place.

Clean, polish, and color.

Set the stones.

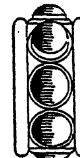
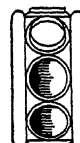
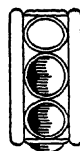
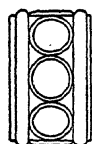
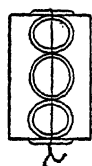


Fig. 78 — Straight metal shank with round stones, rings, and domes

RING WITH ROUND STONES, RINGS  
AND DOMES

Figs. 77, 78

*Type  
of  
Ring*

Shank—Straight band.

Ornament—Round stones, domes, and rings.

The following metal sheet, wire, and stone sets are required:

Sterling silver sheet 22-gauge  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch wide for the shank.

Fine silver sheet 28-gauge for the bezels.

Fine silver wire 24-gauge for the rings and the bearing.

Sterling silver sheet 26-gauge for the domes.

Sterling silver wire 10-gauge drawn half-round for the rings to edge the shank.

Stones—Three round cabochon.

*Tools  
and  
Working  
Materials*

Ring sizes

Ring gauge

Metal gauge

Charcoal block

Gas and air blow torch

Pickle

Copper pickle pan

Copper tongs

Gas plate

Ruler

Dividers

File

Bench pin

Jeweler's saw frame

Jeweler's saw blade

Snub nose pliers

Binding wire

26-gauge

Flux

Borax slate or saucer

Solder

Jeweler's shears

Camel's hair brush

Ring mandrel

Mallet

Emery cloth

Scotch stone

Polishing motor

Felt buffing wheel

Felt ring buff

Tripoli cake

Granite pan

<i>Tools</i>	Soda, ammonia, and	Dapping die punch
<i>and</i>	water solution	Dapping die
<i>Working</i>	Round mandrel—size	Bristle buffing wheel
<i>Materials</i>	of the stone	Chamois buffing wheel
	Binding wire	Rouge stick
	28-gauge	Potassium sulphide so-
	Dentimetre	lution
	Stone lifter	Whiting
	Round mandrel—size	Ring clamp
	smaller than the	Pusher
	bezel	Burnisher
	Dapping die cutter	Soft cloth buffing
	Lead dapping block	wheel

## PROCESSES

## RING SHANK

*Measuring  
the  
Finger*

Measure the finger for size. A loose fit for this type of ring is necessary.

*Gauging  
p. 346*

Gauge the metal.

*Annealing  
p. 18*

Anneal the metal.

*Laying  
out the  
Pattern*

Sterling silver sheet 22-gauge.  
Place one arm of the dividers over the straight edge of the silver sheet.  
Scribe a line with the other arm on the metal  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch wide, parallel with the edge and to loose-fit ring size;  $\frac{1}{16}$  inch of this width is for construction purposes.

*Sawing  
p. 31*

Saw the strip of metal the measured length and width.

## PROCESSES

*Bending*

Bend the strip so the two ends meet to form the shank.

*Fitting*

Join the ends to form a perfect fit.

*Binding*

Bind the shank firmly.

*Soldering*

Solder the joint.

p. 38

*Shaping*

Shape the shank on the ring mandrel.

Tap lightly with a mallet; reverse several times on the tapered mandrel to insure a perfect circle.

*Truing*

True both edges with a file and emery cloth.

*Cleaning*

Remove excess solder and scratches with a file and scotch stone.

p. 70

*Polishing*

Buff the outside with a felt buffing wheel and tripoli and the inside with a felt ring buff and tripoli.

p. 71

## ORNAMENT

*Making  
the*

Fine silver sheet 28-gauge.

*Bezel*

Make three round bezels to fit the stones as shown in Figs. 56, 57.

p. 153

*Making  
the*

Fine silver wire 24-gauge.

*Bearing*

Make three wire rings to fit inside the bezels for the bearing.

p. 155

*Ring  
Making*

Make nine rings the outside circumference of the bezel.

p. 112

Bring the ends together to make an even joint as shown in Fig. 77.

## PROCESSES

- Disk* Sterling silver sheet 26-gauge.  
*Cutting and* Cut and dome six disks the diameter of the bezel.  
*Doming*  
p. 120
- Wire* Sterling silver wire 10-gauge.  
*Drawing* Draw the wire half round.  
p. 96
- Ring Making* Make two rings the outside circumference of the shank.  
Bring the ends together to make an even joint.
- Placing the Small Rings* Place the nine rings on the charcoal block in a straight line so the joint of each ring touches the preceding ring.
- Soldering* Solder the joints of the two large rings.  
Solder the nine rings together.
- Bending* Bend the band so the two end rings meet.
- Binding* Bind the two end rings.
- Soldering* Solder the joint.
- Shaping* Place the soldered band of rings on a round mandrel.  
Tap lightly with a mallet; reverse several times on the tapered mandrel to form a perfect circle to fit the shank.  
Shape the two large rings in the same way.  
True on the surface plate.

PROCESSES	JOINING THE RING SHANK AND THE ORNAMENT
<i>Binding</i>	Bind the band of rings in the center of the shank.
<i>Soldering</i>	Solder in place.
<i>Polishing</i>	Buff with a bristle buffing wheel and tripoli.
<i>Binding the Large Rings</i>	Place the outside rings of wire to touch the band of small rings; hold in place with binding wire. $\frac{1}{32}$ inch of the shank will be left on each edge outside the rings.
<i>Soldering</i>	Solder in place.
<i>Filing</i>	File off the $\frac{1}{32}$ edges flush with the wire rings.
<i>Placing the Domes</i>	Place the domes in the rings (these will have to be placed and soldered separately or in groups depending upon the curve of the ring shank). Three adjoining rings are left open to hold the bezels for the stones.
<i>Soldering</i>	Solder in place.
<i>Placing the Bezels and Bearing</i>	Place the bezels in the three remaining rings. Place the bearings in the bezels.
<i>Soldering</i>	Solder in place.
<i>Cleaning</i>	Remove any excess solder and scratches with a file and scotch stone.
<i>Polishing</i>	Buff with a bristle buffing wheel and tripoli. Polish with a cloth or chamois buffing wheel and rouge.



## PROCESSES

*Coloring*

p. 72

Color the ring with potassium sulphide solution. Method number two.

Polish with a soft cloth or chamois buffing wheel.

*Setting  
the**Stone*

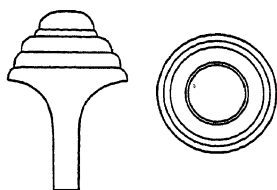
p. 165

Push the silver of the bezels over the edge of the stones with the pusher.

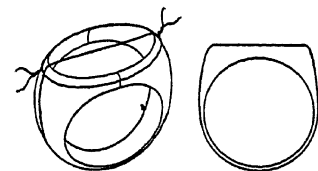
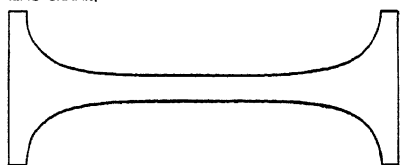
Burnish the metal around the stones to smooth with the burnisher.

## RING WITH A ROUND STONE AND BUILT-UP DOME

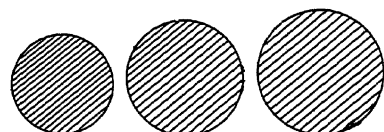
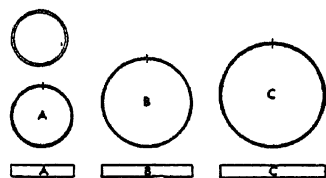
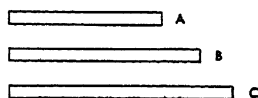
RING DESIGN



RING SHANK.



ORNAMENT



Shank—Shaped band.

Ornament — Three collars and round stone set.

Shank — Sterling silver sheet 16-gauge.

Saw to pattern.

Anneal the metal.

Bend so the ends meet.

Bind and solder.

Shape the shank.

Ornament — Sterling silver sheet 26-gauge.

Cut a strip  $\frac{1}{16}$  inch wide into three lengths

A the circumference of the stone.

B  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch longer than A.

C  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch longer than B.

Join the ends of each length.

Bind and solder.

Shape round.

Sterling silver wire 26-gauge.

Make a bearing to fit inside of A.

Sterling silver sheet 24-gauge.

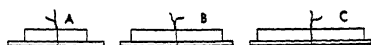
Saw three disks  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch larger than A, B, and C.

Fig. 79.—Shaped metal shank with round stone and built-up dome

# Assembling Parts of the Ornament

## ASSEMBLING PARTS OF THE ORNAMENT

Bind and solder A, B, and C on the three disks and the bearing inside of A.



Pierce the center of each disk.

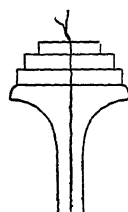


Bind and solder A, B, and C together.

# Joining the Ring Shank and the Ornament

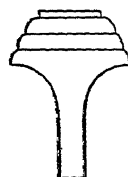
## JOINING RING SHANK AND THE ORNAMENT

Bind the ornament to the shank.



Solder in place.

Buff the edges of the disks which extend beyond A, B, and C.



Clean, polish, and color.

Set the stone.

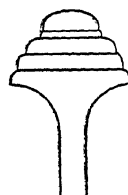


Fig. 80.—Shaped metal shank with round stone and built-up dome

# RING WITH A ROUND STONE AND BUILT-UP DOME

Figs. 79, 80

*Type  
of  
Ring*

Shank—Shaped metal band.

Ornament—Round cabochon stone on raised steps.

The following metal and stone set are required:

Sterling silver sheet 16-gauge for the shank.

Sterling silver sheet 26-gauge for the collars of the disks and for the bezel.

Sterling silver wire, 26-gauge for the bearing. Sterling silver sheet 24-gauge for the disks.

Stone—Round cabochon.

*Tools  
and  
Working  
Materials*

Ring size

Ring gauge

Metal gauge

Ruler

Thin tracing paper

Pencil

Fine pumice powder

White beeswax

Gas plate

Scratch awl

Bench pin

Jeweler's saw frame

Jeweler's saw blade

#1

Gas and air blow torch

Charcoal block

Pickle

Copper pickle pan

Copper tongs

Mallet

Forming block

Ring mandrel

Binding wire

26-gauge

Jeweler's saw blade

#3/0

Flux

Borax slate or saucer

Solder

Jeweler's shears

Camel's hair brush

Round mandrel

Scotch stone

File

Felt buffing wheel

Felt ring buff

Polishing motor

Tripoli cake

*Tools  
and**Working**Materials*

Soda, ammonia, and water solution	Potassium sulphide so- lution
Granite pan	Ring clamp
Dentimetre	Bench vise
Dividers	Stone lifter
Emery cloth #1	Pusher
Center punch	Repoussé tool
Hand drill	Chasing hammer
Twist drill	Burnisher
Chamois buff	Soft cloth buffing wheel
Rouge stick	
Whiting	

## PROCESSES

*Measuring  
the**Finger**Gauging  
the**Metal*

p. 346

*Transferring  
the**Design*

p. 33

*Sawing*

p. 31

*Annealing*

p. 18

## RING SHANK

Measure the finger for size.

Gauge the metal to be used.

Sterling silver sheet 16-gauge.

Transfer the traced pattern to the silver; use the wax method.

*Note:* The distance between the two points at the end of the curve determines the size of the ring shank; the spread between the ends of the curved lines should equal half the circumference of the largest disk of the ornament.

Saw the metal following the scratched line of the pattern.

Anneal the blank just sawed.

## PROCESSES

*Bending*

Bend the blank in the forming block as shown in Figs. 74 and 75.

Bring the two ends together as shown in Fig. 79 to form the shank.

*Fitting*

Saw through the joints formed by the meeting of the four ends with a 3/0 saw blade to insure perfect joints.

*Binding*

Bind the shank firmly, as shown in Figs. 12, 79.

*Soldering*

Solder the joints.

p. 38

*Shaping*

Shape the shank on the ring mandrel.

Tap lightly with a mallet; reverse several times on the tapered mandrel to form a perfect circle. Shape the front opening on a round mandrel. Tap lightly with a mallet to form a perfect circle.

*Cleaning*

Remove any excess solder with a file and scotch stone.

p. 70

*Polishing*

Buff the outside with a felt buffing wheel and tripoli and the inside with a felt ring buff and tripoli.

p. 71

## SEPARATE PARTS OF THE ORNAMENT

*Making*

Sterling silver sheet 26-gauge  $\frac{1}{16}$  inch wide.

*a Round*

Make a bezel A as shown in Figs. 56, 57.

*Bezel*

Make two collars B and C following directions under bezel making; one collar should be  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch longer and the other  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch longer than the strip cut for the bezel.

*and**Bearing**and**Collars*

Sterling silver wire 26-gauge.

p. 153

Make a ring with the inside diameter of A for the bearing.

## PROCESSES

*Inscribing  
Circles*

Sterling silver sheet 24-gauge.

Inscribe three circles on the silver with dividers.  
The diameter of the three disks should be  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch greater than the diameter of the bezel A and the two collars B and C.

*Sawing*

Saw out the disks.

ASSEMBLING PARTS OF THE  
ORNAMENT*Binding*

Place the bearing inside the bezel A.

Bind A in the center of the smallest disk.

Bind B in the center of the medium-sized disk.

Bind C in the center of the largest disk.

*Soldering*

Solder A, B, and C on the disks and the bearing  
inside A.

*Piercing*

Pierce the center of the disks.

p. 35

*Binding*

Bind A, B, and C together firmly.

*Soldering*

Solder together.

JOINING THE RING SHANK AND  
THE ORNAMENT*Binding*

Bind the ornament ABC to the ring shank.

Let disk C rest over the opening.

*Soldering*

Solder in place.

*Cleaning*

Remove any excess solder with a file and scotch  
stone.

*Polishing*

Buff the edges of the disks with a felt wheel  
and tripoli.

Polish with a cloth buffing wheel and rouge.

*Coloring*

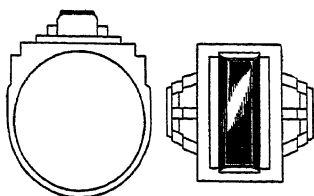
Color with potassium sulphide solution.

p. 72

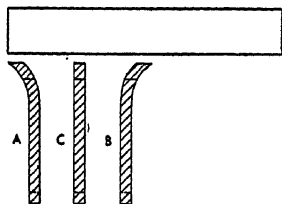
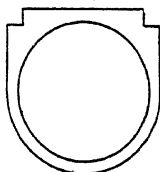
Remove any excess color with whiting.

Polish with a chamois buffing wheel.

## RING DESIGN



## RING SHANK



## ASSEMBLING PARTS OF THE SHANK

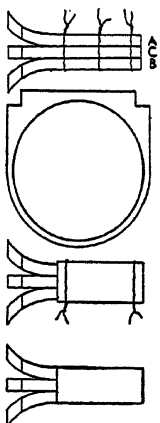


Fig. 81.—Shaped and pierced metal shank with oblong stone, metal plate, and wire units

## RING WITH OBLONG STONE, METAL PLATE, AND WIRE UNITS

Shank—Three sawed silver forms.

Ornament—Opaque oblong stone, flat plate, and wires.

Shank—Sterling silver sheet 14-gauge.

Pierce and saw three pieces to pattern.

Anneal the metal.

Curve A and B slightly.

Sterling silver 20-gauge.

Cut a band of silver about four times the gauge of the metal.

## Assembling Parts of the Shank

Bind and solder A, B, and C together.

File inside of the ring to size, the outside circumference the desired width.

Bind and solder the band to the shank.

File the applied band even with A and B.

File A, B, and C flat on top to hold the ornament.



Ornament—Sterling silver sheet 14-gauge.

Saw a rectangle longer and wider than the stone.

Sterling silver sheet 24-gauge.

Saw a rectangle the width of the stone and the length plus twice the depth of the stone and add to this length  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch. File the corners round.

Mark length of the stone on the small rectangle as shown at A and B.

Anneal the smaller rectangle.

Score the marked line.

Bend the ends at a right angle.

Solder at the angles.

Sterling silver wire  $\frac{1}{16}$ -inch square.

Saw two pieces the length of the bent rectangle.

Assembling Parts of the Ornament

Bind and solder the bent form to the large rectangle.

Bind and solder the two pieces of square wire in place.

Joining the Ring Shank and the Ornament

Bind and solder the ornament to the shank.

Clean, polish, and color.

Set the stone.

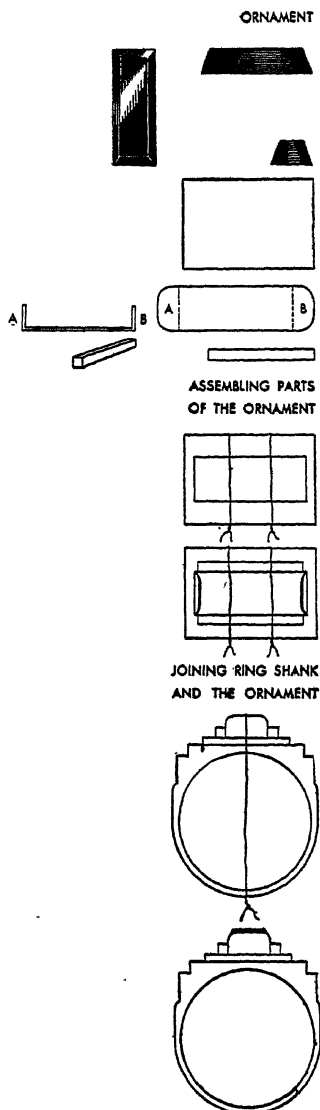


Fig. 82.—Shaped and pierced metal shank with oblong stone, metal plate, and wire units

RING WITH OBLONG STONE, METAL  
PLATE, AND WIRE UNITS

Figs. 81, 82

*Type  
of  
Ring*

Shank—Three flat forms cut to shape.

Ornament—Oblong opaque stone set, flat plate, and wires.

The following metal, wire, and stone are required:

Sterling silver sheet 14-gauge for the shank and the flat plate for the ornament.

Sterling silver sheet 20-gauge for the outside band of the shank.

Sterling silver sheet 24-gauge for the rectangle to hold the stone.

Sterling silver wire 10-gauge drawn  $\frac{1}{16}$  inch square to hold the stone at the sides.

Stone—Oblong black onyx.

*Tools  
and  
Working  
Materials*

Ring sizes

Ring gauge

Metal gauge

Drawing paper

Compass

Thin tracing paper

Soft pencil

Pumice powder

Gas plate

White beeswax

Pliers

Scratch awl

Center punch

Hammer

Twist drill

Hand drill

Bench pin

Jeweler's saw frame

Jeweler's saw blade

#1

File

Charcoal block

Gas and air blow torch

Pickle

Copper pickle pan

Copper tongs

Dividers

Round mandrel

Forming block

Bench vise

Mallet

Ruler

<i>Tools</i>	Binding wire 24-gauge	Steel hammer
<i>and</i>	Flux	Steel surface plate
<i>Working</i>	Borax slate or saucer	Square hole draw plate
<i>Materials</i>	Solder	Draw tongs
	Jeweler's shears	Boric acid and alcohol solution
	Camel's hair brush	Chamois buffing wheel
	Ring clamp	Rouge stick
	Half round file, 6-inch	Potassium sulphide solution
	Scotch stone	Whiting
	Polishing motor	Stone lifter
	Felt buffing wheel	Pusher
	Felt ring buff	Small repoussé tool
	Tripoli cake	Chasing hammer
	Granite pan	Soft cloth buffing wheel
	Soda, ammonia, and water solution	Burnisher
	Small square file	
	Snub nose pliers	

## PROCESSES

## RING SHANK

*Measuring  
the*

Measure the finger for the size.

*Finger*

*Gauging  
the*

Gauge the metal sheet and wire to be used.

*Metal*

p. 346

*Drawing  
the*

Draw a circle on paper with a compass one size smaller than the measured size of the ring.

*Pattern*

Draw the outline for the inside of the ring around this circle.

Draw the outline of the outer contour a little wider than the desired size of the finished ring, as shown in Fig. 81.

## PROCESSES

- Tracing* Make three tracings of the shank.
- Transferring the Design* Sterling silver sheet 14-gauge.  
Transfer the tracings to the silver; use the wax method.
- p. 33*
- Piercing and Sawing* Pierce and saw three pieces to pattern.
- pp. 31, 35*
- Annealing* Anneal the blanks just sawed.
- p. 18*
- Shaping* Curve A and B slightly in the forming block (Fig. 75).
- Measuring* Sterling silver sheet 20-gauge.  
Scribe a line over the straight edge of the sheet  $\frac{1}{16}$  inch wider than the thickness of A, B, and C, long enough to reach around the shank to  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch on each side of the sawed step in the shank.
- Sawing* Saw the measured length.
- ASSEMBLING PARTS OF THE SHANK
- Binding* Bind A, B, and C together as far as the curve of A and B.
- Soldering* Solder A, B, and C together.
- p. 38*
- Truing* True the curve of A and B if necessary.
- Filing* File the inside of the ring to size and the outside the desired width.
- p. 25*
- Binding* Bind the band of silver around the shank. Each end should measure  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch from the first step in the shank. Solder in place.

## PROCESSES

*Filing*

File the applied band even with A and B.  
Hold the back of the shank in the ring clamp.  
File A, B, and C flat on top to hold the ornament.

*Cleaning*

p. 70

Remove any excess solder with a file and scotch stone.

*Polishing*

p. 71

Buff with a flat felt buffing wheel and tripoli outside. Use the felt ring buff and tripoli inside.

## ORNAMENT

*Measuring*

Measure the length and the width of the stone with the dividers.

Sterling silver sheet 14-gauge.

Inscribe on the silver a rectangle wider and longer than the stone.

Sterling silver sheet 24-gauge.

Measure a rectangle the width of the stone and the length of the stone plus twice the depth—to this add  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch.

*Sawing*

Saw out both rectangles.

*Filing*

Round the ends of the small rectangle with a file.

*Annealing*

p. 18

Anneal the smaller rectangle.

*Scoring*

p. 157

Score the annealed silver with the angle of the small square file the length of the stone; leave an equal margin on each end as shown in Fig. 82.

*Bending*

Bend the ends at a right angle on the scored lines.

*Soldering*

Solder at the bent angles.

## PROCESSES

<i>Wire</i>	Sterling silver wire 10-gauge.
<i>Drawing</i>	Draw the wire $\frac{1}{16}$ inch square.
p. 96	
<i>Sawing</i>	Saw the two pieces of wire the length of the bent rectangle.
<i>Filing</i>	File the ends to true.

ASSEMBLING PARTS OF THE  
ORNAMENT

<i>Binding</i>	Bind the bent form to the center of the large rectangle.
<i>Soldering</i>	Solder in place.
<i>Binding</i>	Bind the two pieces of square wire on each side of the bent form; the wires must be flush with both ends.
<i>Soldering</i>	Solder in place.

JOINING THE RING SHANK AND THE  
ORNAMENT

<i>Binding</i>	Bind the ornament to the ring shank.
<i>Soldering</i>	Solder in place.
<i>Cleaning</i>	Remove any excess solder with a file and scotch stone.
<i>Polishing</i>	Buff with felt buffing wheel and tripoli. Polish with a chamois or cloth buffing wheel and rouge.
<i>Coloring</i>	Dip in a solution of potassium sulphide.
p. 72	Remove any excess color with whiting. Polish with a soft cloth or chamois buffing wheel.

## PROCESSES

*Holding**the**Ring*

Hold the shank in a ring clamp.

Place the clamp in the jaws of the table vise.

*Setting**the**Stone*

p. 165

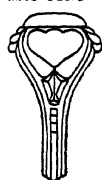
Set the stone between the wires and the ends of the bent rectangle.

Tap the ends over the stone.

Smooth with a file.

Burnish the metal to polish.

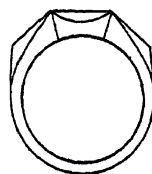
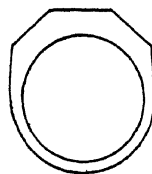
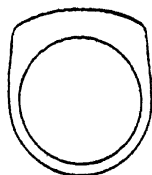
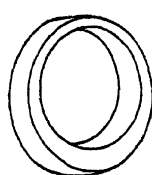
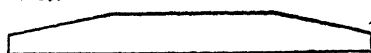
## RING DESIGN



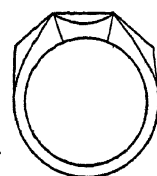
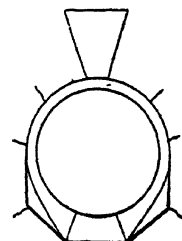
## RING WITH THREE STONES AND CARVED DESIGN



## PATTERN



## CASTING



Shank — Casting.

Ornament — Three stones and carved design.

Pattern of tin.

Roll the bar of tin at each end the thickness of 12-gauge.

Saw to pattern.

Bend so the two ends meet.

Solder the joint with soft solder.

Shape round.

File the inside surface of the shank a little smaller than the desired size.

File the planes for the stones and the outline and the contour of the shank.

Mold of cuttle-bone as shown in Fig. 14.

Prepare the cuttle-bone.

Press the pattern in the cuttle-bone to form the mold.

Cut the funnel and vents.

Casting.

Melt the metal in the crucible.

Pour the metal into the mold.

Saw off the button and the vents.

File the inside to ring size.

Smooth with a file.

Polish the surfaces.

Fig. 83.—Cast shank with three stones, and carved design



## ORNAMENT

## Ornament

Transfer the outline of the stone girdles and the lines to be carved.

Center punch and drill holes in each space.

Pierce the openings the exact size of the girdles of the stones.

Carve the wall of the center setting above the bearing straight down.

Carve the walls above the bearings next to the center setting at an angle; cut the other two walls straight down.

Polish.

Carve the lines around the shank.

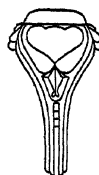
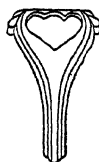
Carve and file the edges around the bezels for a gypsy setting.

Carve the motif at the end of the two side stones.

Color.

Set the stones.

Retouch with color and polish.



*Fig. 84.—Cast shank with three stones, and carved design*

# RING WITH THREE STONES AND CARVED DESIGN

Figs. 83, 84

## Type of Ring

Shank—Casting.

Ornament—Three stones and carved design.

The following metal and stone sets are required:

Sterling silver or 18 karat gold  $2\frac{1}{2}$  times the weight of the tin pattern.

Stone sets—One oval, cabochon stone, two matching stones, irregular in form, flat base.

## Tools and Working Materials

Ring sizes	Soft solder (lead and tin)
Ring gauge	
Dividers	Gas and air blow torch
Paper shears	Flat and half round files
Bar of tin	
Rolling mill	File card
Shellac, alcohol dye solution	Two pieces of cuttle-bone
Soft brush	Powdered graphite
Scratch awl	Knife
Bench pin	Binding wire
Jeweler's saw frame	26-gauge
Jeweler's saw blade #1	Jeweler's scales
Forming block	Jeweler's shears
Ring mandrel	Pickle
Wooden mallet	Copper pickle pan
Flux (electrician's paste)	Copper tongs
Brush	Gas plate
	Crucible #3
	Iron tongs

<i>Tools and Working Materials</i>	Prepared reducing flux	Oil stone
	or powdered borax	Light oil
	Emery cloth #1	Kerosene cloth
	Polishing motor	Ink eraser
	Felt buffing wheel	File card
	Tripoli cake	Bristle buffing wheel
	Felt ring buff	Chamois buffing wheel
	Soda, ammonia, and water solution	Rouge stick
	Granite pan	Potassium sulphide so- lution
	Stone lifter	Whiting
	Center punch	Small repoussé tools
	Twist drill #60	Chasing hammer
	Hand drill	Burnisher
	Wooden core	Soft cloth or chamois
	Ring clamp	buffing wheel
	Gravers	

## PREPARATION FOR CASTING

### PROCESSES

### THE PATTERN

#### *Measuring*

Measure the finger two sizes larger than the size desired; this will be the required length of the pattern to be cut.

Measure with the dividers the depth and width of the stones to be set.

#### *Making the Paper Pattern*

Make a paper pattern the measured length, wide enough to take care of the settings and the carved lines of the ornament.

#### *Rolling*

Roll a piece of bar tin to about 12-gauge on the ends, leaving a heavier gauge in the center, thicker than the depth of the stones.

## PROCESSES

*Transferring  
the  
Pattern  
to the  
Metal*  
p. 36

Transfer the pattern. Use the painted method. Place the paper pattern on the tin, the center of the pattern on the thickest part. Scratch the pattern in the metal.

*Sawing*  
p. 31

Saw the metal, following the scratched line of the pattern.

*Bending*

Bend the blank in the forming block as shown in Fig. 74 to bring the two ends together.

*Fitting*

Saw through the joint.

*Soft  
Soldering*  
p. 43

Solder the joint with soft solder (lead and tin).

*Shaping  
the  
Shank*

Shape the shank on the ring mandrel. Tap with a mallet, reversing several times on the tapered mandrel to form a perfect circle.

*Filing*  
p. 25

File the inside of the shank a little smaller and the back a little wider than the desired size. File the outline, contours, and planes.

## THE MOLD

*Preparing  
the  
Cuttle-bone*  
p. 54

Prepare the cuttle-bone.

*Placing  
the  
Pattern*

Hold the cuttle-bone in the palm of the hand. Place the tin pattern of the shank in the center of the smooth surface of the cuttle-bone with the back of the shank one inch from the end.

## PROCESSES

*Forming  
the**Mold*

p. 54

Press the front of the shank into the cuttle-bone until the back of the shank rests on the surface of the cuttle-bone.

Press the shank evenly until half is embedded.

Place the other piece of cuttle-bone so that it registers with the first piece.

Hold between the palms and press slowly until the two flat surfaces of the cuttle-bone meet.

*Marking  
to**Register*

p. 55

Mark lines on the cuttle-bone on both ends and sides with a saw blade.

*Removing the  
Pattern**from the**Mold*

p. 55

Remove the tin pattern.

*Cutting  
the**Funnel**and the**Vents*

Cut the funnel and vents in the cuttle-bone as shown in Fig. 15.

*Binding*

Bind the two pieces of cuttle-bone together.

## CASTING THE PATTERN

*Weighing  
the**Pattern**and the**Silver**Pickling*

p. 22

Weigh the tin pattern.

Weigh the metal,  $2\frac{1}{2}$  times the weight of the pattern.

Clean in pickle.

## PROCESSES

*Melting**the**Metal*

p. 56

*Pouring**the**Metal**into the**Mold**Removing**the**Casting**from the**Mold**Sawing**Pickling**Filing**Polishing*

p. 71

Place the metal in a crucible.

Melt the metal until it spins; add borax or reducing flux just before pouring.

Direct the flame on the metal while pouring. (The metal must be kept in fluid state.)

Pour the metal into the funnel of the cuttlebone.

Remove the casting from the mold.

Saw off the button and the vents.

Clean in pickle.

File to true and to remove any rough surfaces.

Buff the outside with a felt buffing wheel and tripoli and the inside with a felt ring buff and tripoli.

CARVING THE ORNAMENT AND  
SETTINGS*Transferring**the**Design**for**Carving**and**Settings*

p. 36

Transfer the design. Use the painted method. Scratch a line with the dividers in the center around the shank.

Scratch a line at right angles to the above dividing line at the widest part of the shank.

Pick up the oval stone with the stone lifter.

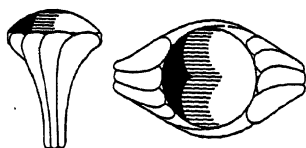
Center the stone on these two dividing lines.

Scratch into the metal around the girdle of the stone.

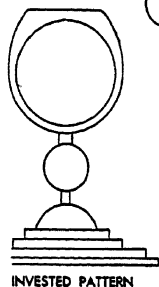
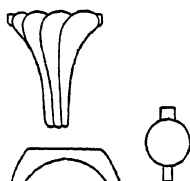
## PROCESSES

- Place the stones on the side planes.  
Center the point of the stone on the dividing line. Leave a space between the center and the side stones.  
Scratch around the girdles of the stones.  
Scratch the lines to be carved in the shank.
- Center Punching*  
Locate and mark three points within the spaces marked by the girdles of the stones.  
Slip the shank on a wooden core.  
Center punch each of the located marks.
- Drilling*  
p. 35  
Drill three holes as marked with the punch.
- Piercing*  
p. 35  
Pierce the openings just drilled. They should be the exact size of the girdles of the stones.
- Carving the Bearings*  
p. 164  
Place the shank in a ring clamp.  
Carve the walls for the center stone straight.  
Carve the walls for the side stones nearest the center stone at an angle to slope inward.  
Carve the other walls straight.
- Filing*  
File the metal but keep the original gauge around the stone.
- Polishing*  
Buff with a bristle buffing wheel and tripoli.  
Polish with chamois buffing wheel and rouge.
- Carving the Shank*  
p. 87  
Carve the lines in the shank.  
Round off the metal with the graver between the carved lines, also the edge, to give the appearance of rounded wires.  
Carve the motif at the end of each of the pointed stones as shown in Fig. 84.
- Coloring*  
p. 22  
Color the ring with potassium sulphide solution.  
Remove any excess color with whiting.
- Setting the Stones*  
p. 165  
Set the stones as shown in Fig. 55.

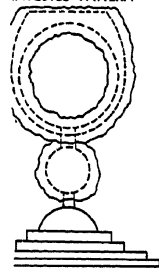
## RING DESIGN



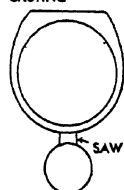
## WAX PATTERN



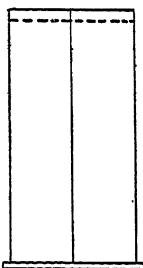
## INVESTED PATTERN



## CASTING



SAW

RING WITH ROUND STONE  
AND CARVED DESIGN

Shank—Casting.

Ornament—Round stone set and carved design.

Pattern of Wax

Model the size, shape, and contour of the shank in wax.

Press the stone in the wax to get the depth of the setting.

Carve the wax around the stone at an angle for a gypsy setting and the design in the pattern.

Remove the stone.

Determine the amount of metal required for the casting as shown in Figs. 16, 17.

Place a  $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch ball of wax on the sprue pin; insert the pin through the back of the shank.

Seal the pattern to the pin.

Seal the wax ball to the pin  $\frac{1}{16}$  inch from the pattern.

Double the thickness of the sprue pin with wax between the ball and the pattern.

Place the sprue pin in the sprue former and seal with wax.

Clean the wax surface with soap powder. Rinse with water.

Investing the Pattern

Paint the wax ball and pattern  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch thick with mixed investment.

Fig. 85.—Cast shank, round stone, and carved design



Let the investment set.

Place the flask on the sprue former, indicate on the outside the position of the pattern.

Invest the pattern. Remove the sprue former and sprue pin when the investment has set.

Bake the invested flask.

Ream the sprue hole twice its original size.

#### Casting

Cast the pattern.

Saw off any excess silver attached to the surface of the casting.

Polish and smooth the surfaces.

Sharpen any carved surfaces with the graver.

Color.

Set the stone.

### RING WITH ROUND STONE AND CARVED DESIGN

Fig. 85

#### *Type of Ring*

Shank—Casting.

Ornament—Round cabochon stone and carved design.

The following metal and stone set are required:

Sterling silver—The same volume of metal as wax, adding about two dwts. of metal to this measurement.

Stone—Round cabochon.

#### *Tools and Working Materials*

Ring sizes

Bunsen burner or gas  
flame

Dental inlay casting  
wax (stick form)

Oil

Ring mandrel

Steel tool (knife or  
flat dental tool or  
graver)

<i>Tools</i>	Graduate cylinder (1	Prepared reducing flux
<i>and</i>	inch or more diam-	or borax
<i>Working</i>	eter)	Pan 4-inch depth or
<i>Materials</i>	Sprue pin	more
	Sprue former	Jeweler's saw frame
	Soap powder	Jeweler's saw blades
	Soft brush	#1
	Dental casting invest-	Half-round 6-inch file
	ment	Scotch stone
	Spoon	Polishing motor
	Rubber dish	Bristle buffing wheel
	Wire brush or steel	Felt buffing wheel
	wool	Felt ring buff
	Spatula	Tripoli cake
	Small paint brush	Granite pan
	Casting flask	Soda, ammonia, and
	Gas plate	water solution
	Thin asbestos sheet	Soft cloth or chamois
	Crucible	buffing wheel
	Centrifugal casting	Rouge stick
	machine	Gravers
	Tripod	Oilstone
	Iron screen	Light oil
	Clay pot (a little taller	Kerosene cloth
	than the sprue	Potassium sulphide so-
	former plus the	lution
	height of the flask)	Stone lifter
	Gas plate or Bunsen	Ring clamp
	burner	Table vise
	Reamer	Small repoussé tool
	Flat file	Chasing hammer
	Iron tongs	Burnisher
	Gas and air blow torch	Soft cloth buffing
		wheel

## PREPARATION FOR CASTING

## PROCESSES

## THE PATTERN

*Measuring*

Measure the finger for the size.

*Heating  
the  
Wax  
p. 59*

Warm the blue stick casting wax to soften.

*Oiling  
the  
Mandrel*

Oil the ring mandrel.

*Modeling  
the  
Shank  
p. 59*Model the wax around a steel ring mandrel to form the shank a size smaller than desired and about  $\frac{1}{16}$  inch thicker than the finished ring to allow for filing.*Forming  
the  
Bezel*

Place the stone and press into the warm wax; be sure the wax is left heavy enough around the stone so the casting can be filed for a gypsy setting (Fig. 62).

*Carving  
the  
Design*Carve the design in the wax pattern.  
Remove the stone from the wax.*Note:* If the stone is transparent or translucent, cut the wax out under the set, leaving a small ridge for the stone to rest upon.*Removing  
the  
Pattern  
from the  
Mandrel*

Remove the pattern from the mandrel,

## PROCESSES

*Measuring  
the*

*Amount  
of  
Metal  
Required*

p. 60

Measure the amount of metal necessary for the casting as shown in Fig. 17.

*Placing  
the*

*Wax Bead  
on the  
Sprue  
Pin*

p. 61

Place a  $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch wax bead on the sprue pin.

*Placing  
the*

*Pattern  
on the  
Sprue Pin*

Place the back center of the wax pattern on the sprue pin.

*Sealing  
the*

*Bead*

Seal the bead to the pin  $\frac{1}{16}$  inch from the pattern.

*Thickening  
the*

*Sprue  
Pin*

Thicken the sprue pin with wax, twice its diameter between the ball and the pattern.

*Sealing  
the*

*Sprue Pin  
on the  
Former*

Place the sprue pin in the hole of the sprue former.

Seal with wax. Care must be taken to have the pattern  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch or more below the top of the flask.

## PROCESSES

*Washing  
the  
Pattern*

Wash the pattern with a soft brush, soap powder, and water. Rinse in water.

## INVESTING

*Mixing  
the  
Investment*  
p. 62

Mix the investment with water to a smooth, thick, creamy consistency.

*Coating  
the  
Pattern*  
p. 62

Paint the pattern with the mixed investment. Let the investment set about 15 minutes.

*Preparing  
the  
Sprue  
Former*  
p. 61

Polish the sprue former.  
Oil the rim of the former.

*Placing  
the  
Flask*

Place the flask on the rim of the sprue former.

*Mixing  
the  
Investment*

Mix the investment to a thin pouring consistency.

*Investing  
the  
Pattern*  
p. 63

Invest the pattern.

## PROCESSES

*Removing  
the*

*Flask*

*from the*

*Sprue*

*Former*

p. 63

Remove the flask from the sprue former when the investment has set.

*Removing*

*Excess*

*Investment*

p. 63

Remove any excess investment from the inside rim of the flask.

## BALANCING THE MACHINE

*Preparing*

*the*

*Crucible*

Place damp asbestos sheet cut to pattern in the crucible.

*Placing*

*the*

*Metal*

*in the*

*Crucible*

Place the metal to be cast in the crucible.

*Balancing*

*the*

*Machine*

p. 64

Balance the machine as shown in Fig. 19.

## BAKING THE INVESTMENT

*Baking*

*the*

*Investment*

p. 65

Melt out the wax pattern and bake the invested flask over a Bunsen burner or in an inlay furnace. See Question 8, p. 69.

*Note:* Melt out the wax before placing in an inlay furnace.

## PROCESSES

*Reaming  
and  
Filing*  
p. 65

Ream the sprue hole twice its original size.  
File across the top of the invested flask to be sure of an even surface.

*Heating  
the  
Investment  
with the  
Torch*

Heat the sprue-hole end of the invested flask with the flame of the blow torch until red hot.  
*Note:* If flask was baked in an inlay furnace, omit heating with blow torch.

## CASTING

*Placing  
the  
Flask  
in the  
Machine*  
p. 64

Place the flask in the machine.

*Winding  
the  
Spring  
of the  
Machine*  
p. 66

Wind the spring.

*Locking  
the  
Carrier*  
p. 66

Lock the carrier as shown in Fig. 14.

*Heating  
the  
Metal*  
p. 66

Heat the metal and sprinkle with borax or prepared reducing flux when it becomes red hot and again when it reaches the fluid state just before it is cast.

## PROCESSES

- Casting the Pattern*  
p. 66  
Release the carrier when the metal reaches a fluid state.
- Removing the Flask*  
Remove the flask from the carrier.
- Cooling the Casting*  
p. 67  
Cool the casting by degrees in water.

## FINISHING

- Removing the Casting*  
Remove the casting from the investment.
- Washing the Casting*  
Wash the casting in water to remove the investment.
- Pickling*  
Clean in pickle.
- Sawing*  
p. 31  
Saw off any excess metal attached to the casting with the jeweler's saw blade.
- Filing*  
p. 25  
File the casting to remove any roughness if necessary. File the inside of the ring with a six-inch half round file.
- Preparing the Box for a Gypsy Setting*  
File away the metal around the top of the bezel at the angle. Keep the original depth of the metal around the stone as shown in Fig. 62.
- Cleaning*  
Remove any scratches with the file and scotch stone.



## PROCESSES

*Polishing*

p. 71

Buff the outside surfaces with a bristle buffing wheel and tripoli and the inside surface with a felt ring buff and tripoli.

Polish with a cloth or chamois buffing wheel.

*Carving*

p. 87

Carve any surfaces to sharpen with the graver.

*Coloring*

p. 72

Color the ring with potassium sulphide solution.

*Setting  
the**Stone*

p. 165

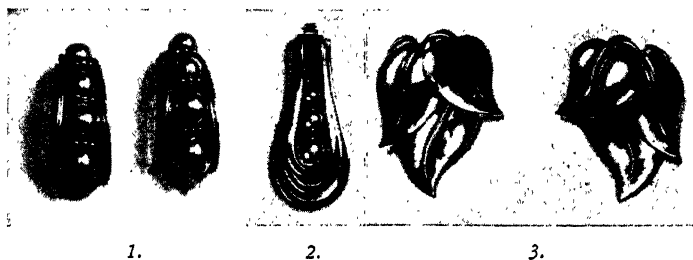
Set the stone as shown in Fig. 55.

---



- 1.—Clip of wire, bead, and sawed forms.  
 2.—Brooch of looped wire—Clips of looped wire.  
 3.—Clip of wire, balls, and stone set.  
 4.—Brooch of coiled wire.  
 5.—Clip of coiled strips.

- 6.—Brooch—Chased and repoussé.  
 7.—Brooch with sawed and stamped units.  
 8.—Brooch of built-up units.  
 9.—Clip of domes, balls, and coils.  
 10.—Brooch of applied units and stones.



1.—Clips of beads, balls, and wire  
2.—Clip of wire loops and beads  
3.—Clips of silver leaves

---

## BROOCHES AND CLIPS

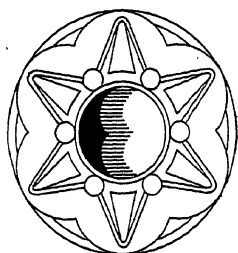
---

The brooch is a useful as well as an ornamental piece of jewelry. Brooches vary in size and form. The greatest size in this piece of jewelry was reached in the Scottish brooch used to pin the plaid in place on the shoulder. A brooch is made up of three parts: the foundation, the ornament, and the fastening.

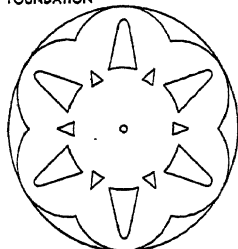
The foundation, as its name indicates, is the base to which the fastening is attached and upon which the ornament rests. The foundation often forms part of the ornament (Figs. 86, 87 illustrate this method) although some brooches are so constructed that the foundation serves only that purpose. The fastening is composed of the joint, the catch, and the pin stem. These are always attached under the base and concealed by it.

Like other pieces of jewelry a brooch may be decorated with the material of which it is made or with stones set into the foundation or resting upon it. Flat metal or wire in different forms appliquéd on the foundation may be used to ornament the background. All silver, or silver combined with gold, or silver combined with copper can be used with good effect.

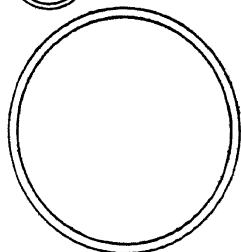
## BROOCH DESIGN



FOUNDATION



ORNAMENT



## BROOCH PIERCED AND DECORATED WITH WIRE AND BALLS

Foundation—Dome.

Ornament — Pierced, applied wire and balls.

Foundation—Sterling silver sheet 20-gauge.

Inscribe a 1½-inch circle on the silver.

Saw out the disk.

Anneal the disk.

Transfer the design.

Dome the disk about ⅜ inch.

Drill a small hole in the center.

Ornament

Pierce twelve triangles in the foundation.

Fine silver sheet 24-gauge.

Cut and dome a disk.

Sterling silver wire annealed 16-gauge.

Cut six 1-inch lengths of wire.

Bend in the center.

Make a hook on each end.

Sterling silver wire 14-gauge.

Make two rings, one the diameter of the large dome and one the diameter of the small dome.

Solder the joints.

File one side flat.

Fine silver wire.

Make six balls.

Fig. 86.—Domed brooch pierced and decorated with wire and balls

Joining the Ornament and the  
Foundation

Insert the hooked ends of one bent wire unit in two small pierced triangles in the foundation.

Bind to the foundation.

Repeat with the other five wires.

Solder in place.

Saw out the outline of the foundation.

File the edges smooth.

Bind the flat side of the large ring under the foundation.

Place the small dome on the flat side of the small ring.

Bind in the center of the foundation.

Solder together.

Solder the six balls over the wires around the center dome.

Solder the joint and catch to the rim of the foundation a little above center.

Clean, polish, and color.

Rivet the pin stem in the joint.

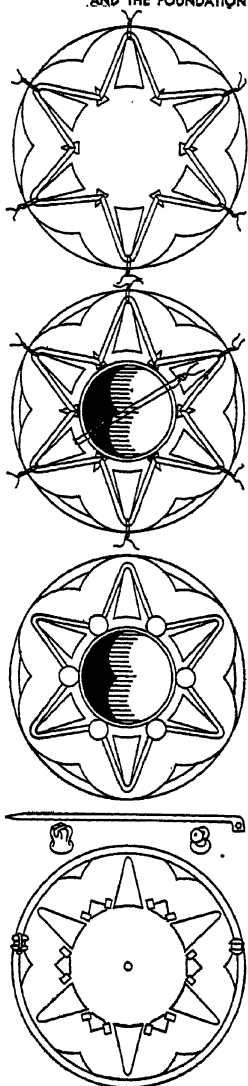


Fig. 87. — Domed brooch  
pierced and decorated with  
wire and balls

Joining the Ornament and the  
Foundation

Insert the hooked ends of one bent wire unit in two small pierced triangles in the foundation.

Bind to the foundation.

Repeat with the other five wires.

Solder in place.

Saw out the outline of the foundation.

File the edges smooth.

Bind the flat side of the large ring under the foundation.

Place the small dome on the flat side of the small ring.

Bind in the center of the foundation.

Solder together.

Solder the six balls over the wires around the center dome.

Solder the joint and catch to the rim of the foundation a little above center.

Clean, polish, and color.

Rivet the pin stem in the joint.

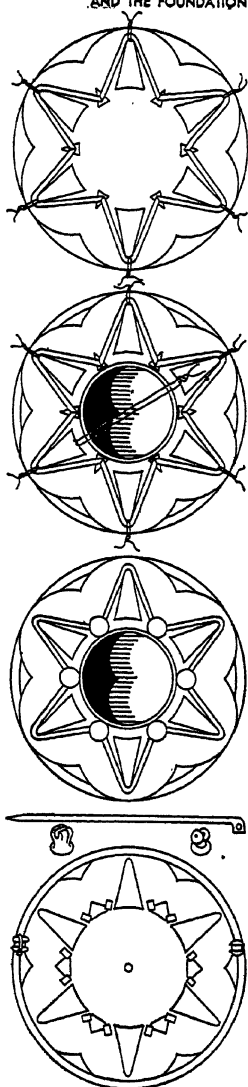


Fig. 87. — Domed brooch  
pierced and decorated with  
wire and balls

# BROOCH PIERCED AND DECORATED WITH WIRES AND BALLS

Type  
of  
Brooch

Figs. 86, 87

Foundation—Dome.

Ornament—Pierced, applied wire, and balls.

The following sheet metal, wire, and brooch fittings are required:

Sterling silver sheet 20-gauge for the foundation dome.

Fine silver sheet 24-gauge for the center dome.

Sterling silver wire 16-gauge to outline the pierced triangles.

Sterling silver wire 14-gauge for the base rings of the two domes.

Fine silver wire for the balls.

Brooch fittings—joint, catch, and pin tongue.

Tools  
and  
Working  
Materials

Metal gauge	White beeswax
Ruler	Soft cloth
Dividers	Scratch awl
Bench pin	Dapping die or lead
Jeweler's saw frame	dapping block
Jeweler's saw blade	Large round head steel
#1/0	stake
Flat file	Raising hammer
Charcoal block	Mallet
Gas and air blow torch	Center punch
Pickle	Twist drill #70
Copper pickle pan	Hand drill
Copper tongs	Dapping die cutter—
Gas plate	half-inch
Pliers	Dapping die punch
Thin tracing paper.	Emery cloth

<i>Tools</i>	Jeweler's shears	Granite pan
<i>and</i>	Round nose pliers	Binding wire
<i>Working</i>	Steel surface plate	26-gauge
<i>Materials</i>	Steel hammer	Bristle buffing wheel
	Round mandrels	Soap and water solu-
	(three sizes for the	tion
	balls, base of large	Scrub brush
	dome and small	Chamois buffing wheel
	dome balls)	Rouge stick
	Flux	Potassium sulphide so-
	Borax slate or saucer	lution
	Solder	Whiting
	Camel's hair brush	Soft cloth buffing
	Scotch stone	wheel
	Polishing motor	Reamer
	Felt buffing wheel	Nickel silver wire 18-
	Tripoli cake	gauge for rivet
	Soda, ammonia, and	Cutters
	water solution	Small riveting hammer

## PROCESSES

*Gauging  
the  
Metal*  
p. 346

*Inscribing  
a Circle*

*Sawing*  
p. 31

*Annealing*  
p. 18

## FOUNDATION

Gauge the metal.

Sterling silver sheet 20-gauge. Inscribe a  $1\frac{1}{2}$ -inch circle on the silver sheet.

Saw out the disk.

Anneal the disk.



## PROCESSES

*Pickling*

Clean in pickle.

p. 22

*Transferring  
the*

Transfer the design on the metal; use the wax method.

*Design  
to the**Metal*

p. 33

*Doming*

Dome the disk to form the foundation.

p. 121

*Drilling*

Drill a small hole in the center.

p. 35

## ORNAMENT

*Piercing*

Pierce the twelve triangles in the foundation.

p. 35

*Cutting  
and*

Fine silver sheet 24-gauge.

*Doming*

Cut and dome a disk for the center of the foundation.

p. 121

*Truing*

File the base to straighten.

Rub on emery cloth to smooth.

*Cutting  
Lengths  
of Wire*

Sterling silver wire 16-gauge.

Cut six lengths of wire 1 inch long.

*Bending  
the*

Bend each length in the center with the round nose pliers.

*Wire*

Hammer the ends to flatten with a steel hammer on a steel stake.

*Annealing*

Anneal the wire.

## PROCESSES

- Making  
a Hook* Form a small hook on each of the flattened ends with the pliers.
- Ring  
Making* Sterling silver wire 14-gauge.  
p. 112 Make a ring the diameter of the large dome.  
Make a ring for the small dome to rest on; the ring should extend a little beyond the edge of the dome.
- Soldering* Solder the joints of the rings.  
p. 38
- Truing* Tap the rings on a round mandrel with a mallet to true.
- Filing* File the base of both rings to flatten.  
p. 25 Smooth on emery cloth.
- Cleaning* Remove any excess solder with a file and scotch stone.  
p. 70
- Polishing* Buff with a felt buffing wheel and tripoli.
- Ball  
Making* Fine silver wire.  
p. 120 Make six balls of equal size.

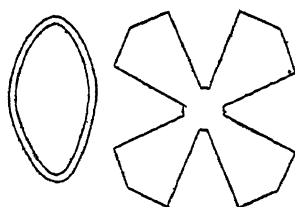
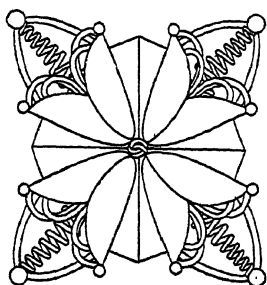
JOINING THE ORNAMENT AND THE  
FOUNDATION

- Binding* Insert two hooked ends of a wire unit in two small pierced holes on each side of a large pierced triangle.  
Bind the wire unit so as to frame the pierced triangle; it must touch the foundation at all points.  
Repeat the above with the other five units.

## PROCESSES

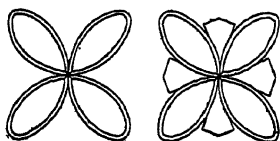
- Soldering* Solder in place.
- Sawing* Saw the outline of the foundation.
- Filing* File all edges smooth.
- Binding* Bind the large ring under the foundation.  
Bind the small ring and the dome in the center of the foundation.
- Soldering* Solder the rings and domes in place.  
Solder the six balls over the wire ends spaced evenly around the center dome.
- Pickling* Clean in pickle.
- Cleaning* Remove any excess solder or scratches with a  
p. 70 file and scotch stone.
- Polishing* Buff with felt buffing wheel and tripoli around  
p. 71 the outer edge of the foundation and to flatten the wire units slightly on top.  
Buff the recessed parts with a bristle buffing wheel and tripoli.
- Placing the Joint* Place the right side of the brooch on the charcoal block—the top away from the worker.  
Care must be taken to keep a geometrical or a balanced design straight.  
Place the joint a little above the center on the right side of the brooch close to the outer edge.
- Placing the Catch* Place the catch directly opposite the joint with the opening down.
- Binding* Bind the joint and the catch in place.
- Soldering* Place the flux and a small piece of solder on one side of the joint and catch,  
Solder in place.

PROCESSES	Inspect the solder to be sure it has run completely around the base of the joint and the catch.
<i>Pickling</i>	Clean in pickle.
<i>Polishing</i> p. 71	Polish with a cloth or chamois buffing wheel and rouge stick.
<i>Coloring</i> p. 72	Color with potassium sulphide solution. Remove any excess color with whiting. Polish with a chamois or soft cloth buffing wheel.
<i>Reaming</i>	Ream out the holes in the pin stem slightly larger than the joint.
<i>Making the Rivet</i>	Select a piece of nickel wire slightly larger than the hole in the joint. File one end of the wire about $\frac{1}{4}$ inch to a blunt point to fit through the holes of the joint and the pin stem. Place the pin stem in the joint. Place the wire through the holes of the joint and the pin stem. Cut the thick end of the wire with the wire cutters so as to leave a small head. Cut the filed end shorter and leave enough to make a head.
<i>Riveting the Pin Stem in Place</i>	Rivet the wire ends with a small riveting hammer. Finish with a file and emery if any sharp edge is left on the edge of the rivet.



ASSEMBLING PARTS  
OF THE FOUNDATION

$\frac{1}{2}$  SIZE



ORNAMENT

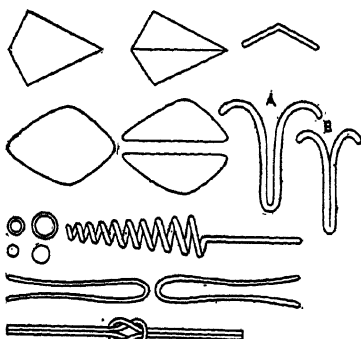


Fig. 88.—Built-up brooch of sheet metal  
and wire units

## BROOCH BUILT UP WITH METAL UNITS

Foundation—Wire and flat metal.

Ornament—Repoussé motifs, wires,  
and balls.

Foundation—Sterling silver sheet  
20-gauge.

Saw to pattern.

Drill a hole in the center.

Sterling silver wire 14-gauge.

Make four oval rings.

Assembling Parts of the Foundation

Bind and solder the four oval  
rings together to form a motif.

Solder to the foundation.

Ornament—Sterling silver sheet 20-  
gauge.

Saw four triangles to pattern.

Sterling silver sheet 24-gauge.

Saw four orals to pattern.

Bend the triangles.

Repoussé the ovals.

Sterling silver wire annealed  
20-gauge.

Cut eight  $1\frac{1}{2}$ -inch and  
eight  $1\frac{1}{4}$ -inch lengths of  
wire.

Bend the units A and B.

Make four wire cones.

Fine silver wire 18-gauge.

Make eight small balls and  
four large balls.

Make a square knot.

## Assembling Parts of the Ornament

Bind and solder A and B.

Bind and solder the eight cupped units.

Drill a hole in the base of each cup.

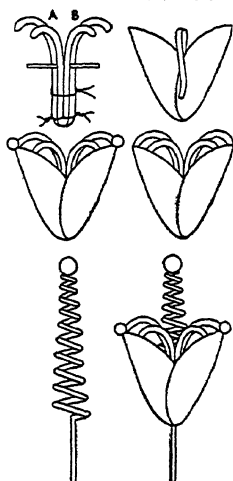
Bind and solder the AB unit inside the cup, the wire ends of A on the point of the cup, the wire ends of B to the edge of the cup.

Repeat the above with the other AB units and cups.

Solder the small balls over the wire ends of A.

Solder the large ball on the point of each cone.

Place a cone inside each cup with the wire through the hole in the base.

ASSEMBLING PARTS  
OF THE ORNAMENT

## Joining the Ornament and the Foundation

Bind and solder the four triangles to the four oval rings.

Bind the cupped motifs to the foundation.

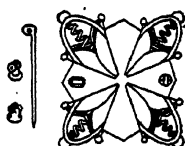
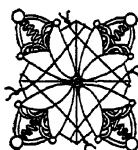
Insert the wire ends of the coils and knot through the hole in the center of the foundation.

Bend the wire ends over the back of the foundation and cut off excess wire. Solder all points of contact.

Solder the joint and catch in place.

Clean, polish, and color.

Rivet the pin stem in the joint.

 $\frac{1}{2}$  SIZE JOINING THE ORNAMENT  
AND THE FOUNDATIONFig. 89.—Built-up brooch of  
sheet metal and wire units

## Assembling Parts of the Ornament

Bind and solder A and B.

Bind and solder the eight cupped units.

Drill a hole in the base of each cup.

Bind and solder the AB unit inside the cup, the wire ends of A on the point of the cup, the wire ends of B to the edge of the cup.

Repeat the above with the other AB units and cups.

Solder the small balls over the wire ends of A.

Solder the large ball on the point of each cone.

Place a cone inside each cup with the wire through the hole in the base.

## Joining the Ornament and the Foundation

Bind and solder the four triangles to the four oval rings.

Bind the cupped motifs to the foundation.

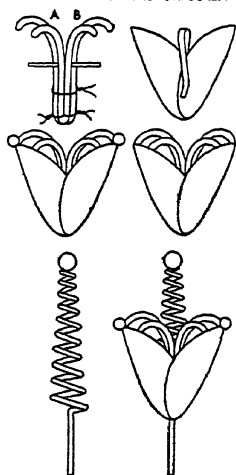
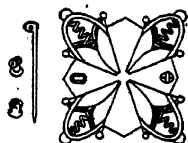
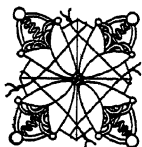
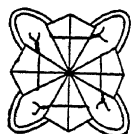
Insert the wire ends of the coils and knot through the hole in the center of the foundation.

Bend the wire ends over the back of the foundation and cut off excess wire. Solder all points of contact.

Solder the joint and catch in place.

Clean, polish, and color.

Rivet the pin stem in the joint.

ASSEMBLING PARTS  
OF THE ORNAMENT $\frac{1}{2}$  SIZE JOINING THE ORNAMENT  
AND THE FOUNDATIONFig. 89.—Built-up brooch of  
sheet metal and wire units

## BROOCH BUILT UP WITH METAL UNITS

Figs. 88, 89

*Type  
of  
Brooch*

Foundation—Shaped form and wires.  
Ornament—Repoussé units, bent, coiled, and knotted wires, and balls.

The following metal sheet, wire, and brooch fittings are required:

Sterling silver sheet 20-gauge for the foundation and the triangular pieces of the ornament.

Sterling silver wire 14-gauge for the oval rings of the foundation.

Sterling silver wire 20-gauge for the wire coils and wire units.

Sterling silver sheet 24-gauge for the repoussé cups.

Fine silver wire 18-gauge for the balls and knot.

Brooch fittings—Joint, catch, and pin tongue.

*Tools  
and  
Working  
Materials*

Metal gauge	Emery cloth
Thin tracing paper	Center punch
Soft pencil	Hand drill
White beeswax	Twist drill
Gas plate	Charcoal block or asbestos pad
Scratch awl	Gas and air blow torch
Soft cloth	Oval mandrel
Bench pin	Pickle
Jeweler's saw frame	Copper pickle pan
Jeweler's saw blades #1/0	Copper tweezers
Medium flat file	Jeweler's shears
File brush	Round nose pliers



*Tools*  
*and*  
*Working*  
*Materials*

Cotter pins of 18-	Scrub brush
gauge binding wire	Round mandrels—two
Flux	sizes
Borax slate or saucer	Pointed mandrel
Solder	Scotch stone
Camel's hair brush	Fine emery cloth
Binding wire	Bristle buffing wheel
26-gauge	Boric acid and alcohol
Steel ruler	solution
Scoring tool	Rouge paste
Hand vise	Soft cloth or chamois
Dapping block	buffing wheel
Repoussé tool	Rouge
Chasing hammer	Potassium sulphide so-
Polishing motor	lution
Felt buffing wheel	Whiting powder
Tripoli cake	Soft cloth
Soda, ammonia, and	Nickel wire for rivet
water solution	Riveting hammer
Granite pan	Steel block

## PROCESSES

*Gauging*  
*the*  
*Metal*  
 p. 346

*Transferring*  
*the*  
*Design*  
 p. 33

*Sawing*  
 p. 31

## FOUNDATION

Gauge the metal.

Sterling silver sheet 20-gauge. Transfer the design to the metal. Use the wax method.

Saw to pattern.

## PROCESSES

*Drilling*

p. 35

Drill a hole in the center of the sawed foundation.

*Annealing*

p. 18

Sterling silver wire 14-gauge. Anneal the wire.

*Making**Oval**Rings*

p. 113

Make four oval rings.

### ASSEMBLING PARTS OF THE FOUNDATION

*Binding*

Bind the four rings together on the charcoal block with staples as shown in Fig. 12.

*Soldering*

p. 38

Solder the rings together to form a motif.

*Binding*

Bind the wire motif to the sawed foundation as shown in Fig. 13.

*Soldering*

Solder together.

*Pickling*

p. 22

Clean in pickle.

### SEPARATE PARTS OF THE ORNAMENT

*Transferring**the**Design*

Sterling silver sheet 20-gauge.

Transfer four triangles to the silver. Use the wax method.

Sterling silver sheet 24-gauge.

Transfer eight ovals to the silver. Use the wax method.

*Sawing*

Saw to pattern.

*Annealing*

Anneal the metal.

*Pickling*

Clean the metal in the pickle.

## PROCESSES

- Scoring*  
p. 157  
Score the triangles lengthwise in the center with a triangular file.
- Bending*  
Bend on the scored line.
- Repoussé*  
p. 77  
Raise the ovals slightly on a lead block using a broad repoussé tool.  
Bend the edges of each to measure  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch apart to form a cupped unit.
- Polishing*  
p. 71  
Polish with a felt buffing wheel and tripoli.
- Annealing*  
Sterling silver wire 20-gauge. Anneal the wire.
- Cutting*  
Cut eight  $1\frac{1}{2}$ -inch lengths of wire.  
Cut eight  $1\frac{1}{4}$ -inch lengths of wire.
- Bending*  
Bend the wires in the center with round nose pliers.  
Curve the ends of the wires as shown in A and B (Fig. 88).
- Coiling*  
p. 111  
Coil four cones of wire; leave about 1 inch of wire on the end of each cone.
- Ball Making*  
p. 120  
Fine silver wire 18-gauge.  
Make eight small balls and four large balls.
- Knotting*  
Make a square knot.

ASSEMBLING PARTS OF THE  
ORNAMENT

- Binding*  
Bind B on A so the two looped ends are even.  
Insert flat binding wire between A and B a little above center to keep the solder from flowing beyond this point as shown in Fig. 89.  
Bind with cotter pins the eight cup-shaped units so they overlap as shown in Fig. 89.

## PROCESSES

*Soldering*

Solder the AB motif.

Solder the seam of the cup-shaped unit.

*Pickling*

Clean in pickle.

*Drilling*

p. 35

Drill a hole in the center base of each of the cup-shaped units, large enough to admit 20-gauge wire.

*Binding*

Place two AB units inside the cup over the two soldered seams. Hold in place with cotter pins as shown in Fig. 89.

Let the wire ends of the A unit meet the point of the cup.

Let the ends of the B unit rest on the edge of the cup about  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch from the point of the cup. Bind in place if necessary.

Repeat with the other six AB units.

*Soldering*

Solder in place.

- Solder the small balls to the points of the cup over the wire ends of A.

Solder the large balls on the end of the cones of wire.

*Placing the  
Coil  
inside  
the Cup*

Place the cones of wire inside the cups.

Let the wire ends extend through the small drilled holes of the cups.

## JOINING THE ORNAMENT TO THE FOUNDATION

*Binding*

Bind the four triangles to the oval rings of the foundation.

*Soldering*

Solder in place.

## PROCESSES

*Pickling*

Clean in pickle.

*Binding*

Bind the four cup-shaped motifs to the foundation. The ball on the end of the cone should rest on the point of the oval ring of the foundation.

Insert the wire ends which extend from the coiled cones through the center hole in the foundation.

Draw the four ends of the square knot through the same hole.

Spread the wires on the back of the foundation.

*Soldering*

Solder the motifs and wires to the foundation.

*Brooch*

Solder the joint and the catch on the back of the foundation.

*Fittings*

p. 252

*Cleaning*

p. 70

Clean in pickle and remove any excess solder with a file and scotch stone.

*Polishing*

p. 71

Buff with a bristle buffing wheel and tripoli.

Polish with a chamois or cloth buffing wheel.

*Coloring*

p. 72

Color with potassium sulphide solution.

Remove any excess color with whiting.

Polish with a chamois or cloth buffing wheel.

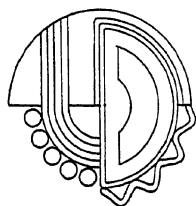
*Riveting**Pin**Stem*

p. 253

Rivet the pin stem in the joint.

## CLIP DESIGN

## CLIP WITH STONE, WIRE, AND BALLS



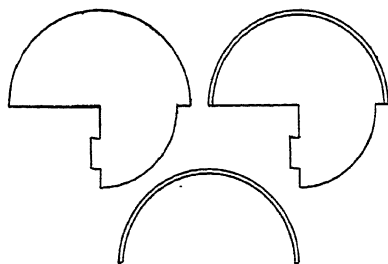
FOUNDATION

Foundation—Flat metal form.

Ornament—Stone set, applied wire, and balls.

Foundation

Sterling silver sheet 18-gauge.



ORNAMENT

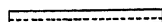


Fig. 90.—Flat clip decorated with a stone, wire, and balls

Saw to pattern.

Sterling silver wire annealed 16-gauge.

Bend and saw a length of wire to fit the half-circle of the foundation.

File slightly to flatten.

Bind and solder to the foundation.

Ornament

Sterling silver sheet 24-gauge.

Make a bezel.

Sterling silver sheet 26-gauge.

Make a bearing.

Fine silver wire 18-gauge.

Bend the wire to pattern.

Make five balls.

Sterling silver wire 16-gauge.

Saw four lengths and bend to pattern.

Bind and solder.

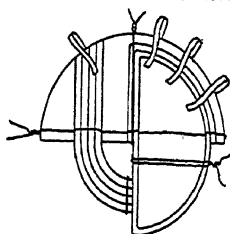
Make a waved wire.

### Joining the Ornament and the Foundation

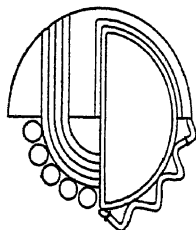
Bind the bezel, bearing, and wires to the foundation.

Solder together.

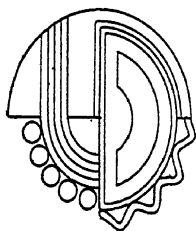
JOINING THE ORNAMENT  
AND THE FOUNDATION



Bind and solder the waved wire and balls to the foundation.



Pierce the metal inside the bezel.



Solder the joint of the clip at the center top with the hook up.

Clean, polish, and color.

Set the stone.

Fasten the clip in the joint and the spring on the hook.

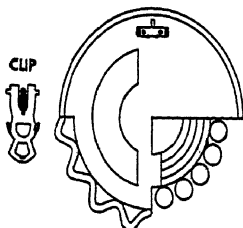


Fig. 91.—Flat clip decorated with a stone, wire, and balls

## CLIP WITH STONE, WIRE, AND BALLS

Figs. 90, 91

*Type  
of  
Clip*

Foundation—Flat metal form.

Ornament—Stone set, wire, and balls.

The following flat metal, wire, stone, and clip fittings are required:

Sterling silver sheet 18-gauge for the foundation.

Sterling silver wire 16-gauge for the foundation and ornament.

Sterling silver sheet 24-gauge for the bezel.

Sterling silver sheet 26-gauge for the bearing.

Fine silver wire 18-gauge for the wire around the bezel for the balls.

Clip fittings—Joint and clip.

Stone—Translucent agate.

*Tools  
and  
Working  
Materials*

Metal gauge

Thin tracing paper

Soft pencil

White beeswax

Gas and air blow  
torch

Soft cloth

Scratch awl

Bench pin

Jeweler's saw frame

Jeweler's saw blade

#1/0

Flat file

Charcoal block

Emery cloth #0

Round nose pliers

Snub nose pliers

Cotter pins of 18-  
gauge flat iron wire

Flux

Borax slate or saucer

Solder

Jeweler's shears

Camel's hair brush

Copper tweezers

Copper pickle pan

Pickle

Gas plate

Binding wire

26-gauge

Dentimetre

Dividers



<i>Tools</i>	Round mandrel— $\frac{1}{8}$ -	Scrub brush
<i>and</i>	inch	Soap
<i>Working</i>	Bench vise	Rouge paste
<i>Materials</i>	Drill stock	Rouge stick
	Iron or steel hook	Chamois buffing wheel
	Alcohol and boric acid	Light oil
	solution	Yellow flake shellac
	Center punch	Shellac stick
	Hand drill	Alcohol
	Twist drill	Potassium sulphide so-
	Scotch stone	lution
	Polishing motor	Whiting
	Bristle buffing wheel	Soft cloth
	Tripoli cake	Soft cloth buffing
	Granite pan	wheel
	Soda, ammonia, and	
	water solution	

## PROCESSES

## FOUNDATION

*Gauging  
the*

*Metal*

p. 346

*Transferring  
the*

*Design*

p. 33

*Sawing*

p. 31

*Annealing*

p. 18

*Bending*

Gauge the metal.

Sterling silver sheet 18-gauge. Transfer the outline. Use the wax method.

Saw to pattern.

Sterling silver wire 16-gauge.

Anneal the wire.

Bend the wire to fit the half circle of the foundation as shown in Fig. 90.

## PROCESSES

<i>Sawing</i>	Saw the wire ends.
<i>Filing</i> p. 25	File the base slightly flat.
<i>Placing</i>	Place the wire with the flattened side on the sawed foundation, the outer edge of wire flush with the edge of the metal foundation.
<i>Binding</i>	Bind the wire in place with cotter pins.
<i>Soldering</i> p. 38	Solder together.

## ORNAMENT

<i>Making the Bezel and Bearing</i> p. 156	Sterling silver sheet 24-gauge. Make a bezel to fit the stone. Sterling silver sheet 26-gauge. Make a bearing to fit the bezel.
<i>Bending Wire</i>	Fine silver wire 18-gauge. Bend the wire to fit the half of the bezel as shown in Fig. 90.
<i>Ball Making</i> p. 120	Make five balls.
<i>Sawing and Bending</i>	Sterling silver wire 16-gauge. Saw four lengths of wire. Bend to pattern.
<i>Binding</i>	Bind together as shown in Fig. 90.
<i>Soldering</i>	Solder together.

## PROCESSES

*Making**Smooth**Waved**Wire*

p. 105

Make a waved wire smooth and flat as shown in Fig. 31.

## JOINING THE ORNAMENT AND THE FOUNDATION

*Binding*

Bind the bezel, bearing, and wires to the foundation.

*Soldering*

Solder together.

*Shaping*

Curve the waved wire to touch the bezel and one end of the foundation wire.

*Soldering*

Solder the waved wire and balls in place.

*Piercing*

Pierce the silver inside the bezel if the stone is transparent or translucent.

p. 35

*Soldering  
the*

Solder the joint of the clip at the center top with the hook up.

*Clip**Cleaning*

Clean in pickle and remove excess solder and scratches with a file and scotch stone.

p. 70

*Polishing*

Buff with bristle buffing wheel and tripoli.

p. 71

Polish with a cloth buffing wheel and rouge.

*Coloring*

Color with potassium sulphide solution.

p. 72

Remove any excess color with whiting.

*Setting  
the*

Set the stone.

*Stone*

p. 165

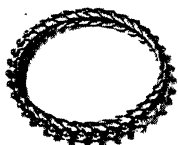
*Setting  
the*

Fasten the two protruding ends on the clip in the joint; fasten the spring on the hook.

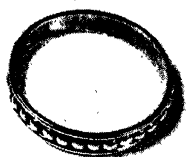
*Clip*



*Silver band wire and  
balls*



*Chevron twist and  
balls*



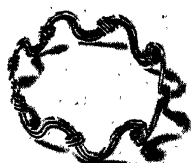
*Silver band wire and  
domes*



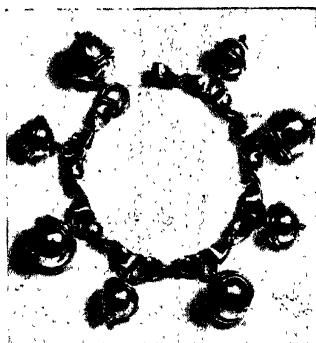
*Sawed and twisted  
bracelet*



*Crimped bracelet*



*Silver wire bracelet*



*Twisted linked bracelet with decorated silver beads*

---

BRACELETS

---

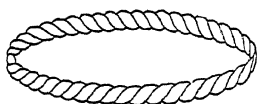
Bracelets are bands of metal or interwoven links of wire made to fit the arm or wrist. They have been worn through the ages to symbolize power, or wealth, or to provide a setting for a stone or an insignia which may or may not have symbolic significance. The bracelet has also been used as an ornament valued for its beauty of design and workmanship.

Recently the use of bracelets as costume jewelry has attached them to prevailing modes of dress which, in turn, influences both design and materials used to produce them. Like all other types of jewelry bracelets vary in design and construction depending upon the mode in vogue. The simplest form of construction is the band of metal or wire with an opening large enough to slip over the wrist. The bracelet made by the American Indian is a well-known example of this type. More elaborate bracelets may be made of chain or hinged pieces of metal.

Ornamentation may be added by piercing or carving the design in the band of the bracelet. A design in relief may be executed in repoussé. Still another method of ornamentation is a stone in a suitable setting applied to the band. This type of ornament may be set also in the clasp. Piercing, carving, or repoussé may be used to create pieces to be applied on the band for decoration or to form decorative motifs to be linked together as a bracelet. Stones in effective settings also may be used to ornament one or more of the units of the linked bracelets.

Ornaments, like the settings for rings, must be proportionate to and suitable in design to the size, width, shape, and construction of the bracelet. When decorated at intervals the repeats should be close enough together to be pleasing at all angles of the curved surface.

## BRACELET DESIGN



## CONSTRUCTION

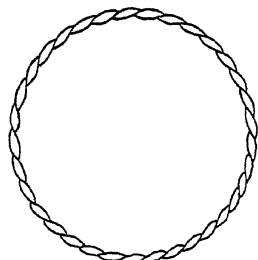
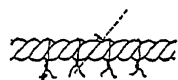
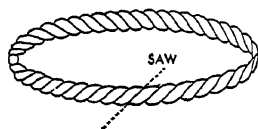
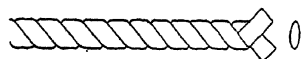
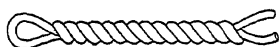


Fig. 92.—Bracelet of twisted wire  
drawn oval

BRACELET OF TWISTED  
WIRE

Foundation and ornament  
Band of twisted wire.

## Construction

Sterling silver wire annealed 10-gauge 18 inches long.

Loop the length of wire in the center.

Twist the two wires together, about twenty-four full turns to make a tight twist.

Draw through the oval hole draw plate to flatten the twist.

Bend the wires so the ends overlap to form a circle about 2½ inches in diameter.

Saw at an angle so there is no break in the twist.

File to make a perfect fit.

Bind together on a piece of flat binding wire to make an even joint.

Solder the joint.

Shape round.

Clean, polish, and color.

## BRACELET OF TWISTED WIRE

Fig. 92

<i>Type</i>	Twisted wire bracelet.	
<i>of</i>	The following wire is required:	
<i>Bracelet</i>	Sterling silver wire 10-gauge—18 inches.	
<i>Tools</i>	Metal gauge	Borax slate or saucer
<i>and</i>	Charcoal block or as-	Solder
<i>Working</i>	bestos pad	Jeweler's shears
<i>Materials</i>	Gas and air blow torch	Camel's hair brush
	Bench vise	Pickle
	Hand vise	Copper pickle pan
	Steel surface plate	Copper tongs
	Steel hammer	Gas plate
	File	Bracelet mandrel
	Oval hole draw plate	Surface plate
	Yellow beeswax	Scotch stone
	Draw tongs or draw	Felt buffing wheel
	bench	Tripoli cake
	Bench pin	Granite pan
	Jeweler's saw frame	Soda, ammonia, and
	Jeweler's saw blade	water solution
	#1/0	Cloth buffing wheel
	Binding wire 14-	Rouge stick
	gauge flattened	Potassium sulphide so-
	Binding wire 24-	lution
	gauge	Whiting
	Flux	Chamois buffing
		wheel

## PROCESSES

*Gauging  
the  
Wire*

p. 46

Gauge the wire, sterling silver wire 10-gauge.

## PROCESSES

*Annealing*

p. 18

*Wire**Twisting*

p. 102

*Wire**Drawing*

p. 96

*Annealing**Bending**Sawing*

p. 31

*Filing*

p. 25

*Binding**Soldering*

p. 38

*Pickling*

p. 22

*Shaping*

Anneal the wire.

Loop the length of wire in the center.

Twist the wire with the hand vise until an even tight twist has been obtained, about twenty-four full turns.

Draw the twisted wire length through the oval hole draw plate until the twist has been flattened (Fig. 29).

Anneal the wire.

Bend the wire so the ends overlap—an 8-inch circle is the usual size.

Saw the overlapped pieces at an angle so there is no break in the twist when the ends are connected as shown in Fig. 92.

File the ends to make a perfect fit.

Flatten about 2 inches of 14-gauge binding wire in the roller.

Place a strip of 14-gauge flat binding wire in back of the joint.

Bind the flattened twist to the flat binding wire with 24-gauge wire on both sides of the joint.

*Note:* Be sure the wires have been held firmly and a good joint has been made.

Solder the joint.

Clean in pickle.

Hammer lightly on a round bracelet mandrel with a mallet to form into a circle.



## PROCESSES

- Truing* Place on a surface plate.  
Tap the edges lightly with a mallet to true.
- Cleaning* Remove scratches or excess solder with a file and scotch stone.
- Polishing* Buff with a felt buffing wheel and tripoli.  
p. 71 Polish with a cloth or chamois buffing wheel and rouge.
- Coloring* Color with potassium sulphide solution.  
p. 72 Rub with whiting and a soft cloth.  
Buff with a cloth or chamois buffing wheel.

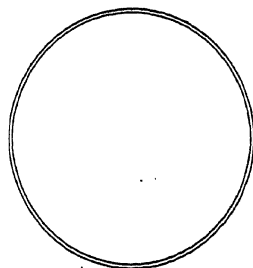
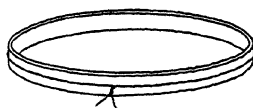
## SET OF THREE BRACELETS

- Wire* Sterling silver wire annealed 10-gauge.  
*Twisting* Make a chevron of twisted wires as shown in Fig. 28.  
Follow the directions given above.
- Wire* Sterling silver wire annealed 8-gauge.  
*Drawing* Draw the wire through the oval hole draw plate.  
Make the bracelet following directions given above.

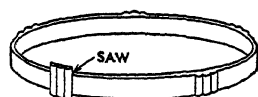
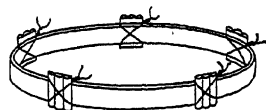
## BRACELET DESIGN



FOUNDATION



ORNAMENT

JOINING THE ORNAMENT  
AND THE FOUNDATIONFig. 93.—Band bracelet with applied  
units of wireBRACELET BAND WITH  
APPLIED WIRE UNITS

Foundation — Band of sheet silver.

Ornament — Wire units.

## Foundation

Sterling silver sheet annealed 18-gauge 8 inches long  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch wide.

Bend the strip so the two ends meet.

Bind and solder the joint.

Shape round.

File the edges.

## Ornament

Sterling silver wire annealed 8-gauge.

Draw the wire half round in two sizes.

Cut the smaller wire in two.

Bind the smaller wires on each side of the larger wire.

Solder the wires together.

Saw in  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch units.

Joining the Ornament and the  
Foundation

Divide the band into five equal parts.

Bind the units to the band.

Solder in place.

Saw off the protruding wires.

Clean, polish, and color.

BRACELET BAND WITH APPLIED  
WIRE UNITS

Fig. 93

*Type*

Straight band with applied wire units.

*of*

The following silver and wire is required:

*Bracelet*Sterling silver sheet 18-gauge 8 inches long  
1/4 inch wide for the foundation.Sterling silver wire 8-gauge drawn half  
round for the ornament.*Tools**and**Working**Materials*

Metal gauge

Tripoli cake

Charcoal block

Soda, ammonia, and  
water solution

Gas and air blow torch

Snub nose pliers

Granite pan

Binding wire

Bench vise or draw  
bench

26-gauge

Pickle

Half round hole draw  
plate

Copper pickle pan

Yellow beeswax

Copper tongs

Draw tongs

Gas plate

Bench pin

Flux

Borax slate or saucer

Jeweler's saw frame

Solder

Jeweler's saw blades

Jeweler's shears

#1/0

Camel's hair brush

Dividers

Bracelet mandrel

Ruler

Mallet

Cloth buffing wheel

Surface plate

Rouge stick

File

Potassium sulphide so-  
lution

Scotch stone

Polishing motor

Whiting

Felt buffing wheel

Chamois buffing wheel

## PROCESSES

## FOUNDATION

*Gauging  
the  
Metal*  
p. 346

Gauge the metal.

*Annealing*  
p. 18

Sterling silver sheet 18-gauge 8 inches long  
 $\frac{1}{4}$  inch wide.  
Anneal the strip.

*Bending*

Bend the strip so the two ends meet.  
File if necessary to make an even joint.

*Binding*

Bind together.

*Soldering*  
p. 38

Solder the joint.

*Pickling*  
p. 22

Clean in pickle.

*Shaping*

Hammer lightly on the round bracelet mandrel  
with a mallet to form into a circle.

*Truing*

Place on a surface plate.  
Tap the edges lightly to true.

*Filing*  
p. 25

File and rub on a flat piece of emery cloth if  
necessary.

*Cleaning*  
p. 70

Remove scratches and excess solder with a file  
and scotch stone.

*Polishing*  
p. 71

Buff with a felt buffing wheel and tripoli.

## PROCESSES

## ORNAMENT

- Wire* Sterling silver wire 8-gauge.
- Drawing* Draw the wire through the half round hole  
p. 96 draw plate. Two sizes will be necessary; the  
smaller wire should be twice the length of the  
larger wire.
- Sawing* Saw the smaller wire in two even pieces.  
p. 33
- Binding* Bind the two smaller wires one on each side of  
the larger wire, as shown in Fig. 93.
- Soldering* Solder the wires together.
- Sawing* Saw the soldered strip of wire in five  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch  
units.

JOINING THE ORNAMENT AND THE  
FOUNDATION

- Spacing* Divide the band into five equal parts and scratch  
a line across the band at right angles.
- Binding* Bind the units of wire at right angles with the  
band so the outer edge of the small wire lies on  
the division line. Let the wires extend over  
the edges of the band  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch. The unit must  
touch the band at all points as shown in Fig. 93.
- Soldering* Solder the wire units to the band.
- Pickling* Clean in pickle.
- Sawing* Saw the protruding wires even with the edge of  
the band.
- Filing* File to smooth the edges.
- Cleaning* Remove any scratches or excess solder with a  
file and scotch stone.

## PROCESSES

*Polishing*

Polish with a felt buffing wheel and tripoli.  
Polish with a cloth or chamois buffing wheel  
and rouge.

*Coloring*

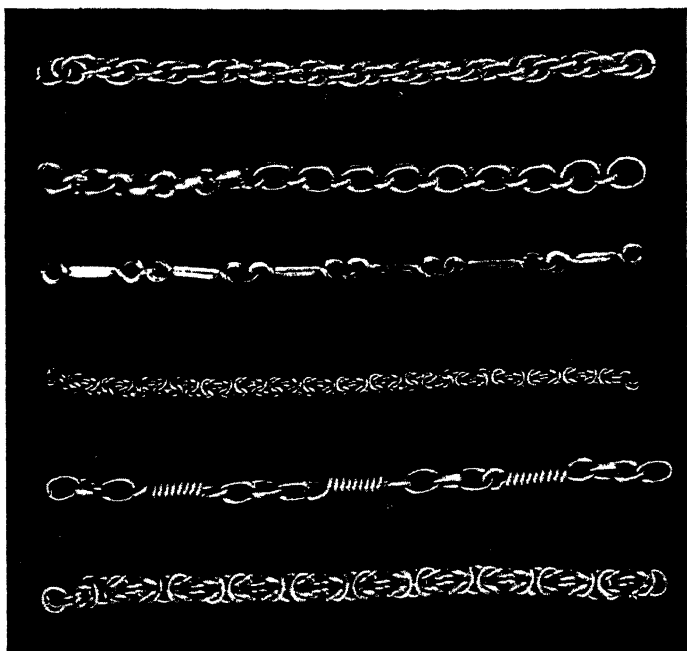
p. 72

Color with potassium sulphide solution.  
Rub with whiting and a soft cloth to remove  
excess color.  
Buff with a chamois or soft cloth buffing wheel.

## SET OF BRACELETS

Take any width silver for the band and proceed  
as above.

The band may be sawed in sections after the  
units have been soldered and several bracelets  
may thus be made.



*Chains, interwoven, coiled, and linked*

---

## CHAINS

---

Chains are made of interlinked wire rings, called links. Chains are worn as necklaces, girdles, and bracelets. They are also used to hold ornaments such as an ear drop, a pendant, or a medal. Often they are the only means of holding some useful object such as a watch, eyeglasses, or a hand bag.

Effective chains may be made of unsoldered links as shown in Fig. 96. Most chains, however, are made of links that are soldered to insure strength and finish. Round or oval links are the forms most commonly used although many modifications of these basic forms are used singly or combined for repeats and connecting decorative units. The shape of the wire may be round, half round,

oval, or square or any other shape. The wire used for the links may be smooth or twisted or a combination of the two to give a varied texture to the chain.

A chain must be flexible. In order to assure flexibility links must move freely in each other. Links and motifs combined for a more elaborate chain must adhere to this rule also.

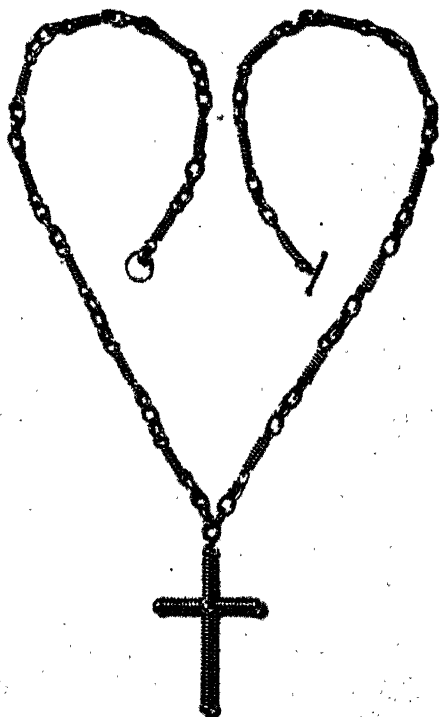
Although a simple chain of links of equal size and shape is a simple piece of jewelry the principles of size, weight, and texture must be used consistently to produce it. When the links and motifs are combined they must be in scale and consistent in weight and design with each other and the ornament with which the chain is to be used.

---

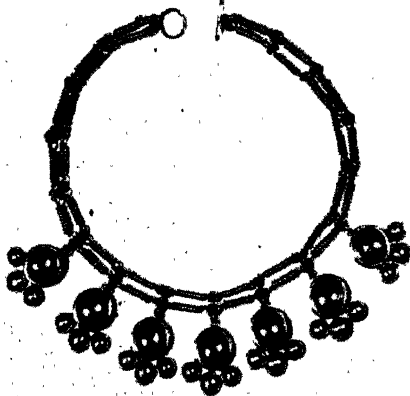


*Pendant and chain.  
Cross of coiled sil-  
ver wire and  
balls.*

*Chain of coiled  
units and oval  
links.*



*Necklace of coiled  
wire chain and  
domed units.*



## CHAIN DESIGN



## CHAIN OF ROUND AND OVAL LINKS

Oval rings linked with round rings.

## CONSTRUCTION

## Construction

Sterling silver wire annealed 18-gauge.



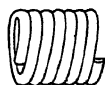
Make a round coil of wire.



Saw the coil into rings.



Solder the joints.



Sterling silver wire 10-gauge drawn half round.

Make an oval coil of wire.

Saw the coil into rings.



Pull the ends apart to open.

Link the oval ring into the four round rings.

Bring the ends of the oval ring together.

Rouge the joints of the round rings.

Solder the joints of the oval rings.

Repeat until the desired length has been made.

Clean, polish, and color.



Fig. 94. — Chain  
of round and oval  
rings

## CHAIN OF ROUND AND OVAL LINKS

Fig. 94.

<i>Type</i>	Round and oval rings.	
<i>of.</i>	The following wire is required:	
<i>Chain</i>	Sterling silver wire 18-gauge for the round rings.	
	Sterling silver wire 10-gauge drawn half round for the oval rings.	
	Twice the number of round rings as oval rings should be made.	
<i>Tools</i>	Metal gauge	Jeweler's saw blade
<i>and</i>	Binding wire	#2/0
<i>Working</i>	26-gauge	Snub nose pliers—two
	Jeweler's shears	pairs
<i>Materials</i>	Charcoal block	Flux
	Gas and air blow torch	Borax slate or saucer
	Pickle	Camel's hair brush
	Copper pickle pan	Solder
	Copper tongs	File
	Gas plate	File brush
	Steel hammer	Half-round hole draw
	Steel surface plate	plate
	Boards (Fig. 33)	Draw tongs
	Bench vise	Yellow beeswax
	C clamp	Oval mandrel
	Round split mandrel	Wrapping paper
	(Fig. 34)	Binding wire
	Hand drill	28-gauge
	Round wooden core	Jeweler's hand vise
	the inside diameter	Scotch stone
	of the coil	Lead jaws for vise
	Jeweler's saw frame	Polishing motor

<i>Tools</i>	Bristle buffing wheel	Potassium sulphide so-
<i>and</i>	Tripoli cake	lution
<i>Working</i>	Soda, ammonia, and	Whiting
<i>Materials</i>	water solution	Soft cloth
	Granite pan	Soft cloth or chamois
	Chamois buffing wheel	buffing wheel
	Rouge stick	

## PROCESSES

## CONSTRUCTION

*Gauging  
the  
Wire*  
p. 346

Gauge the wire.

*Binding*

Sterling silver wire 18-gauge.  
Make a coil of the wire and bind as shown in  
Fig. 4.

*Annealing*  
p. 18

Anneal the wire.

*Pickling*  
p. 22

Clean in pickle.

*Making  
Round  
Rings*  
p. 112

Make a coil on a round mandrel.  
Saw into rings.

*Closing  
the  
Rings*

Close the rings,

## PROCESSES

*Soldering*

p. 38

Place several rings on the charcoal block and solder the joints.

*Wire**Drawing*

p. 96

Sterling silver wire 10-gauge.

Draw the wire half round.

*Annealing*

Anneal the wire.

*Making**Oval**Rings*

p. 113

Make oval rings as shown in Fig. 41.

*Opening**the**Rings*

Open the rings as shown in Fig. 40.

*Linking**the**Rings*

Connect four round rings with an oval ring. Join the two ends of the oval ring as shown in Fig. 94.

*Rouging*

Rouge the joints of the round rings.

*Holding**the**Ring*

Place the joint of the oval ring on the binding wire hook as shown in Fig. 12.

*Soldering*

Solder the joint.

Continue joining and soldering the links until the chain is the desired length.

*Cleaning*

p. 70

Clean in pickle.

Remove excess solder or scratches with a file and scotch stone.

## PROCESSES

*Polishing*

p. 71

Buff with a bristle buffing wheel and tripoli.

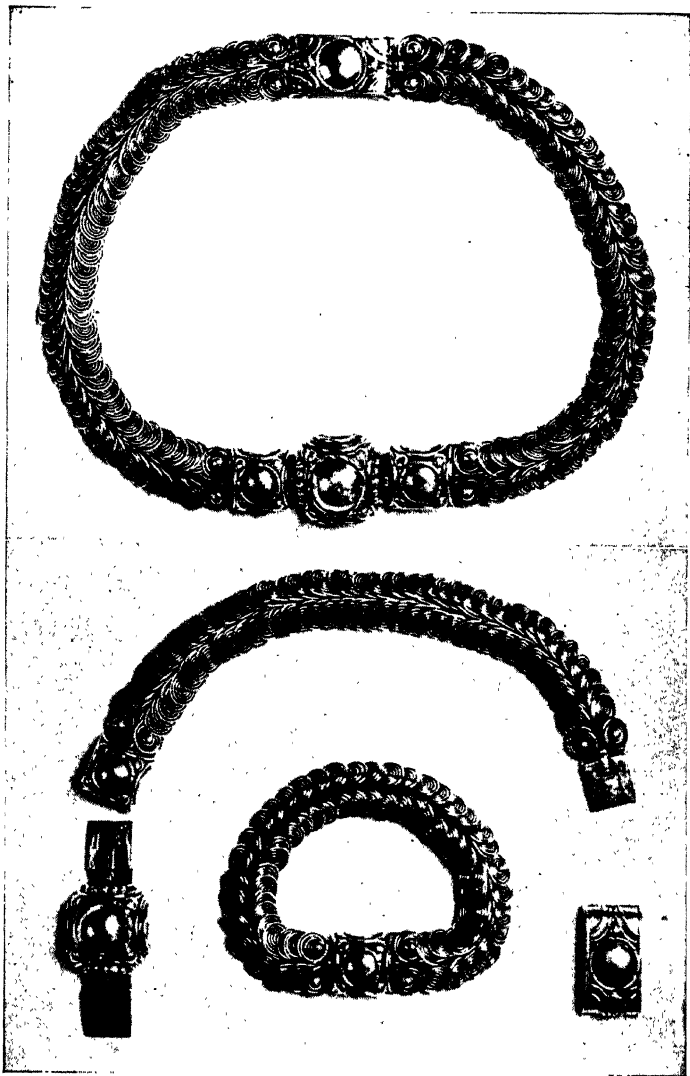
*Coloring*

p. 72

Color with potassium sulphide solution.

Remove any excess color with whiting.

Polish with soft cloth or chamois buffing wheel.



Necklace composed of flat coiled units as shown in Fig. 96, with clasps as shown in Figs. 102, 103, 104, and catch as shown in Fig. 105. It can be broken into separate units and used as bracelets.

## CHAIN DESIGN

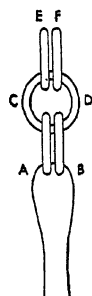
## CHAIN OF INTERWOVEN LINKS



Round rings of wire interwoven.

## CONSTRUCTION

## Construction



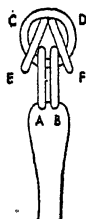
Sterling silver wire annealed 18-gauge.

Make a coil of wire on a steel mandrel 10-gauge.

Saw into rings.

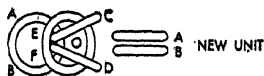
Form a double chain with six rings of wire.

Insert a wire through rings A and B.



Turn back E to the left, F to the right.

Pull C toward the worker, D away from the worker.



Insert two rings AB of the new unit at O.

Fig. 95.—Chain of interwoven round rings



## CHAIN OF INTERWOVEN LINKS

Fig. 95

<i>Type of Chain</i>	Round rings interwoven.	
	The following wire is required:	
	Sterling silver wire 18-gauge.	
	Sixteen inches of wire makes about 26 rings or 1 inch of finished chain.	
<i>Tools and Working Materials</i>	Metal gauge	Jeweler's saw frame
	Binding wire	Jeweler's saw blade
	28-gauge	#2/0
	Jeweler's shears	Snub nose pliers—two
	Charcoal block	pairs
	Gas and air blow torch	Lead jaws for vise
	Pickle	Scratch awl or any
	Copper pickle pan	pointed tool
	Copper tongs	Polishing motor
	Gas plate	Chamois buffing wheel
	Steel hammer	Rouge stick
	Steel surface plate	Soda, ammonia, and
	Boards (Fig. 33)	water solution
	Bench vise	Granite pan
	C clamp	Potassium sulphide so-
	Hand drill	lution
	Split mandrel (10-	Whiting
	gauge steel rod or	Soft cloth buffing
	8-penny nail)	wheel
	Round wooden core	
	the inside diameter	
	of the coil	

## CHAIN OF INTERWOVEN LINKS

Fig. 95

<i>Type</i>	Round rings interwoven.	
<i>of</i>	The following wire is required:	
<i>Chain</i>	Sterling silver wire 18-gauge. Sixteen inches of wire makes about 26 rings or 1 inch of finished chain.	
<i>Tools</i>	Metal gauge	Jeweler's saw frame
<i>and</i>	Binding wire	Jeweler's saw blade
<i>Working</i>	28-gauge	#2/0
<i>Materials</i>	Jeweler's shears	Snub nose pliers—two
	Charcoal block	pairs
	Gas and air blow torch	Lead jaws for vise
	Pickle	Scratch awl or any
	Copper pickle pan	pointed tool
	Copper tongs	Polishing motor
	Gas plate	Chamois buffing wheel
	Steel hammer	Rouge stick
	Steel surface plate	Soda, ammonia, and
	Boards (Fig. 33)	water solution
	Bench vise	Granite pan
	C clamp	Potassium sulphide so-
	Hand drill	lution
	Split mandrel (10-	Whiting
	gauge steel rod or	Soft cloth buffing
	8-penny nail)	wheel
	Round wooden core	
	the inside diameter	
	of the coil	

## PROCESSES

## CONSTRUCTION

*Gauging  
the  
Wire*  
p. 346

Gauge the wire.  
Sterling silver wire 18-gauge.

*Coiling*  
p. 20

Coil the wire and bind as shown in Fig. 4.

*Annealing*  
p. 18

Anneal the wire.

*Pickling*  
p. 22

Clean in pickle.

*Making  
Round  
Rings*  
p. 112

Coil the wire on a 10-gauge steel mandrel,  
Washburn and Moen Mfg. Co. gauge, or 1350  
micrometer.

Insert a wooden core in the coil.  
Saw the coil into rings.

*Opening  
the  
Rings*

Open the rings as shown in Fig. 40.

*Linking  
the  
Rings*

*Step 1*  
Form a double chain of six rings as shown in  
Fig. 95.

*Closing the  
Joints*

Close the openings in the rings.

*Inserting  
the  
Holding  
Wire*

Insert a wire through the rings AB to form a  
loop. (This makes the links easier to hold  
when starting the chain.)  
Hold the wire loop in the left hand.

## PROCESSES

*Forming**the**Chain**Step 2*

Turn back link E to the left.

Turn back link F to the right.

*Step 3*

Pull link C toward the worker.

Push link D away from the worker.

This completes the first unit. Insert a large pin in the opening at O to keep the unit in place until the next two links are inserted.

*Step 4*

Insert two links AB of the new unit in the opening at O as shown in Fig. 96.

Close the links as directed above.

Link the other four rings to form a double chain as described above to prepare for the next unit in the same way the first unit was made.

Repeat from Step 2.

Continue this repetition until the chain is the desired length.

Inspect the chain to see that all links are closed as tightly as possible and that the openings of the links are on the inside of the chain.

*Polishing*

p. 71

Polish with chamois buffing wheel and rouge.

*Coloring*

p. 72

Dip the chain in a potassium sulphide solution. Rub the chain with a soft cloth and whiting until the chain is a polished silver, the oxidized silver left only in the recessed parts.

*Buffing*

Polish with chamois or soft cloth buffing wheel.

## PROCESSES

*Forming**the**Chain**Step 2*

Turn back link E to the left.

Turn back link F to the right.

*Step 3*

Pull link C toward the worker.

Push link D away from the worker.

This completes the first unit. Insert a large pin in the opening at O to keep the unit in place until the next two links are inserted.

*Step 4*

Insert two links AB of the new unit in the opening at O as shown in Fig. 96.

Close the links as directed above.

Link the other four rings to form a double chain as described above to prepare for the next unit in the same way the first unit was made.

Repeat from Step 2.

Continue this repetition until the chain is the desired length.

Inspect the chain to see that all links are closed as tightly as possible and that the openings of the links are on the inside of the chain.

*Polishing*

p. 71

Polish with chamois buffing wheel and rouge.

*Coloring*

p. 72

Dip the chain in a potassium sulphide solution. Rub the chain with a soft cloth and whiting until the chain is a polished silver, the oxidized silver left only in the recessed parts.

*Buffing*

Polish with chamois or soft cloth buffing wheel.

## PROCESSES

*Forming**the**Chain**Step 2*

Turn back link E to the left.

Turn back link F to the right.

*Step 3*

Pull link C toward the worker.

Push link D away from the worker.

This completes the first unit. Insert a large pin in the opening at O to keep the unit in place until the next two links are inserted.

*Step 4*

Insert two links AB of the new unit in the opening at O as shown in Fig. 96.

Close the links as directed above.

Link the other four rings to form a double chain as described above to prepare for the next unit in the same way the first unit was made.

Repeat from Step 2.

Continue this repetition until the chain is the desired length.

Inspect the chain to see that all links are closed as tightly as possible and that the openings of the links are on the inside of the chain.

*Polishing**p. 71*

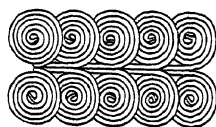
Polish with chamois buffing wheel and rouge.

*Coloring**p. 72*

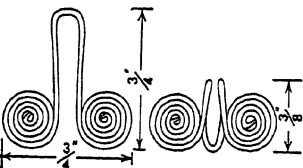
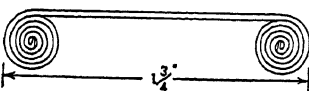
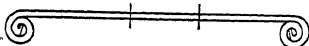
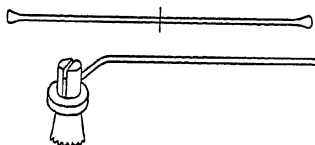
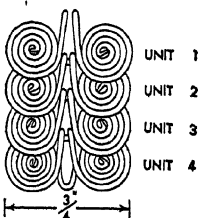
Dip the chain in a potassium sulphide solution. Rub the chain with a soft cloth and whiting until the chain is a polished silver, the oxidized silver left only in the recessed parts.

*Buffing*

Polish with chamois or soft cloth buffing wheel.



UNIT

JOINING THE UNITS  
TO FORM THE CHAINFig. 96.—Chain of interlinked coiled  
unitsCHAIN OF FLAT COILED  
UNITS

## Foundation and Ornament

## Linked coils

## Units of Chain

Sterling silver wire annealed  
22-gauge.

Cut the desired number of wire  
lengths 7 inches long.

Make a flat coil on each end of  
the wires.

Tap each coil lightly on a steel  
surface with a steel hammer.

Loop each unit in the center.

Bend the loop back and down.

Joining the Units to Form the  
Chain

Insert the loop of Unit 2 from  
the front through the loop of  
Unit 1, the coils under the coils  
of Unit 1.

Insert the loop of Unit 3 from  
the front through the loops of  
Units 1 and 2, the coils under  
the coils of Unit 2.

Every new unit added must  
pass through the loops of two  
preceding linked units.

Tap the loops on the under-  
side lightly with a narrow steel  
hammer.

Bend the coils at an angle.

## CHAIN OF FLAT COILED UNITS

Fig. 96

<i>Type</i>	Coiled units linked.
<i>of</i>	The following wire is required:
<i>Chain</i>	Sterling silver wire 22-gauge. Seven inches of wire required for one unit.
<i>Tools</i>	Metal gauge
<i>and</i>	Ruler
<i>Working</i>	Sheet iron—two pieces about 4 inches square
<i>Materials</i>	Iron binding wire 22-gauge Jeweler's shears Gas and air blow torch Pickle Copper pickle pan Copper tweezers Gas plate Mandrel, coiling machine, or round nose pliers Steel surface plate Flat face steel hammer Square nose pliers with smooth jaws Scratch awl or other pointed tool Polishing motor Cloth buffing wheel Rouge stick Potassium sulphide solution Whiting Cloth or chamois buffing wheel

## PROCESSES

## UNIT OF CHAIN

<i>Gauging</i>	Gauge the wire, sterling silver wire 22-gauge.
<i>the</i>	
<i>Wire</i>	
p. 346	



## CHAIN OF FLAT COILED UNITS

Fig. 96

<i>Type</i>	Coiled units linked.
<i>of</i>	The following wire is required:
<i>Chain</i>	Sterling silver wire 22-gauge. Seven inches of wire required for one unit.
<i>Tools</i>	Metal gauge
<i>and</i>	Ruler
<i>Working</i>	Sheet iron—two pieces about 4 inches square
<i>Materials</i>	Iron binding wire 22-gauge Jeweler's shears Gas and air blow torch Pickle Copper pickle pan Copper tweezers Gas plate Mandrel, coiling machine, or round nose pliers Steel surface plate Flat face steel hammer Square nose pliers with smooth jaws Scratch awl or other pointed tool Polishing motor Cloth buffing wheel Rouge stick Potassium sulphide solution Whiting Cloth or chamois buffing wheel

## PROCESSES

## UNIT OF CHAIN

*Gauging*  
*the*  
*Wire*  
p. 346

Gauge the wire, sterling silver wire 22-gauge.

## PROCESSES

*Annealing*  
pp. 18, 20

Anneal the wire between iron sheets.

*Pickling*  
p. 22

Clean in pickle.

*Determining  
the  
Number  
of Units*

Determine the number of units required to make the chain.

*Cutting*

Cut a 7-inch length of wire to be used as a pattern.  
Cut the desired number of lengths required for the bracelet.

*Coiling*  
p. 114

Make a flat coil on each end of the wire as shown in Fig. 42 or 43.  
About five rows of wire are required to make each coil.  
When these two coils are finished the length should measure  $1\frac{3}{4}$  inches.  
Repeat the above with the other lengths of wire.  
Keep the coils uniform.

*Truing  
and  
Hardening*

Place the coils on a flat steel surface.  
Hammer lightly with a steel hammer to flatten the coil; this process hardens the wire and helps to keep the coil firm.

*Looping*

Loop the coiled unit in the center with the round nose pliers.  
Let the coils lie on the outside of the loop.

*Measuring*

Measure the unit which should be  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch from the base of the coil to the tip of the loop and  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch across the coils, as shown in Fig. 96.

## PROCESSES

*Bending**the**Wire**to**Form**the**Hook*

Hold the coils with the long side of the snub nose pliers across the upper edge of the coils and bend the loop at right angles to the coils. Remove the snub nose pliers and complete the loop to form a hook with a pair of round nose pliers held in the bend of the loop. Press over with the fingers as shown in Fig. 96.

Repeat with the other units. Keep uniform.

## JOINING THE UNITS TO FORM THE CHAIN

*Connecting**the**Units*

Insert the loop of Unit 2 from the front through the loop of Unit 1; the coils under the coils of Unit 1.

Insert the point of a scratch awl or any other pointed tool through the loops and pull them so the ends lie next to each other; this makes it easier to insert the loop of the next unit.

Insert the loop of Unit 3 from the right side through the loops of Units 1 and 2. The coils must lie under the coils of Unit 2, as shown in Fig. 96. Remember after the first two units have been joined every unit inserted must pass through the loops of the two preceding linked units.

Continue linking the other units to form the chain.

*Adjusting**the**Coils*

Adjust the coils to overlap evenly.

## PROCESSES

*Tightening  
the**Loops*

Place the chain of coils on a smooth surface, the looped or underside facing up.

Tap the loops lightly with a narrow faced steel hammer.

*Bending  
the**Coils*

Turn the chain on the right side.

Bend the coils down to a slight angle to measure  $\frac{5}{8}$  inch as shown in Fig. 96.

Pinch the coils close together to cover the loop.

*Polishing*  
p. 71

Polish with a cloth buffing wheel and rouge.

*Coloring*  
p. 72

Color the chain with potassium sulphide solution.

Remove any excess color with whiting.

Polish with a soft cloth or chamois buffing wheel.

## CHAIN OF ROUND COILED UNITS AND OVAL LINKS

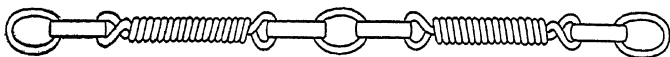


Fig. 97.—Chain of round coiled units linked with oval rings

*Type*

Unit—Wire coil.

*of*

Chain—Oval links.

*Unit*

The following wire is required:

*and*

Sterling silver wire 18-gauge for the unit.

*Chain*

Sterling silver wire 10-gauge drawn half round for the link.

*Tools*

Metal gauge

Gas plate

*and*

Charcoal block

Bench vise

*Working*

Gas and air blow torch

Round mandrel

*Materials*

Pickle

Jeweler's saw frame

Copper pickle pan

Jeweler's saw blade

Copper tongs

#2/0

<i>Tools</i>	Hand vise or square	Binding wire flat 14-
<i>and</i>	nose pliers	gauge
<i>Working</i>	Jeweler's shears	Scotch stone
<i>Materials</i>	File	Polishing motor
	File brush	Felt buffing wheel
	Flux	Bristle buffing wheel
	Borax slate or saucer	Tripoli cake
	Solder	Soda, ammonia, water
	Camel's hair brush	solution
	Half-round hole draw	Granite pan
	plate	Chamois or cloth buf-
	Draw tongs	ing wheel
	Yellow beeswax	Rouge stick
	Oval mandrel	Potassium sulphide so-
	Wrapping paper	lution
	Binding wire 28-	Whiting
	gauge	Soft cloth buffing
		wheel

## PROCESSES

*Gauging*  
p. 346

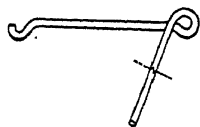
Gauge the wire.

*Annealing*  
p. 18

Sterling silver wire 18-gauge.  
Anneal the wire.

*Looping*

Loop the end of a length of wire on a round mandrel to form a ring.  
Make a second loop 1 inch from the first loop.



*Sawing*  
p. 31

Saw the first loop in half.

Fig. 98.—Looped wire ready to coil

## PROCESSES

*Coiling*

Hold the half ring with the pliers.

Hold the looped end in the jaws of the bench vise.

Coil the wire end which extends from the loop around the wire between the loop and the half ring, until it reaches the base of the half ring. Bring the loose end around the mandrel.

*Sawing*

*Fig. 99.—Coiled unit ready to solder*

Saw the wire loop even with the sawed ring.

*Soldering*  
p. 38

Bring the ends of the wire together to form a ring.

Solder the joint.

*Drawing*  
p. 96

Sterling silver wire 10-gauge.

Draw the wire half round.

*Annealing*

Anneal the wire.

*Making*  
*Oval*  
*Rings*  
p. 113

Make oval rings as shown in Figs. 36, 41.

*Opening*  
*the*  
*Joints*

Open the joints as shown in Fig. 40 of two-thirds of the oval rings.

*Closing*  
*the*  
*Joints*

Close the joints of one-third of the oval rings.

*Soldering*

Solder the joints of the closed oval rings.

## PROCESSES

*Joining  
the**Unit**and**Links**to form**the**Chain*

Join the ring of the coiled unit to the soldered oval ring with the open oval ring.

Close the ring to make an even joint.

Continue until all the rings and units have been joined.

*Soldering*

Place the ring joint on the iron binding wire hook as shown in Fig. 12.

Solder the joint.

Solder the joints of all the rings in the same manner.

*Cleaning*

p. 70

Clean in pickle.

Remove excess solder or scratches with a file or scotch stone.

*Polishing*

p. 71

Buff with a felt and bristle buffing wheel and tripoli.

Polish with a cloth buffing wheel and rouge.

*Coloring*

p. 72

Color with potassium sulphide solution.

Remove any excess color with whiting.

Polish with a cloth or chamois buffing wheel.

## CLASP DESIGN

CLASP-RING SOCKET AND  
SWIVEL CATCH

Socket—Ring of wire.

Catch—Swivel wire and balls.

## SOCKET



Socket

Sterling silver wire 14-gauge.

Make one ring for the socket.

Sterling silver wire 18-gauge.

Make one small ring of wire.

File side of the small ring at the joint.



Solder the rings together at the joints.

## CATCH



Catch

Sterling silver wire 18-gauge.

Measure the outside diameter of the socket ring.

Saw a piece of wire to this measurement.

Make a small ring the size of the small ring attached to the socket and flatten the side at the joint.



Fine silver wire.

Make two small balls.

Solder the small ring to the center of the two balls on each end of the wire length.

Clean and polish.



Fig. 100.—Clasp with  
ring socket and swivel  
catch



CLASP—RING SOCKET AND SWIVEL  
CATCH

Fig. 100

*Type  
of  
Clasp*

Ring socket.

Swivel catch.

The following wire is required:

Sterling silver wire 14-gauge or lighter for the socket.

Sterling silver wire 18-gauge for the catch and small rings.

Fine silver wire for the balls.

*Tools  
and  
Working  
Materials*

Metal gauge

Round mandrel—two  
sizes

Round nose pliers

Jeweler's saw frame

Jeweler's saw blade  
#1/0

File

Gas and air blow torch

Charcoal block

Flux

Borax slate or saucer

Solder

Jeweler's shears

Camel's hair brush

Pickle

Copper pickle pan

Copper tongs

Gas plate

Scotch stone

Polishing motor

Felt buffing wheel

Tripoli cake

Soda, ammonia, and  
water solution

Granite pan

Soft cloth or chamois  
buffing wheel

Rouge stick

## PROCESSES

*Gauging  
the  
Wire*  
p. 346

## SOCKET

Gauge the wire.

## PROCESSES

*Ring  
Making*  
p. 112

Sterling silver wire 14-gauge. Make a large ring.

Sterling silver wire 18-gauge. Make a small ring.

*Filing*  
p. 25

File one side of the small ring at the joint.

*Soldering*  
p. 38

Solder the flattened side of the small ring over the joint of the large ring.

## CATCH

*Sawing*  
p. 31

Sterling silver wire 18-gauge. Saw a piece of wire to measure the outside diameter of the large ring.

*Ring  
Making*

Make a small ring and file joint, as above.

*Ball  
Making*  
p. 120

Fine silver wire.

Make two small balls equal in size.

*Soldering*

Solder the flattened side of the small ring to the center of the wire length.

Solder two small balls on either end of the wire.

Connect the last two open rings of the chain with the two small rings.

Solder the joint.

*Cleaning*  
p. 70

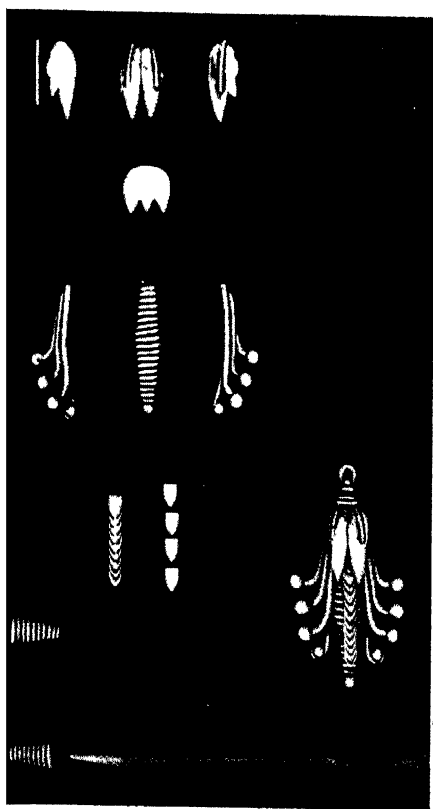
Clean in pickle.

Remove excess solder with a file and scotch stone.

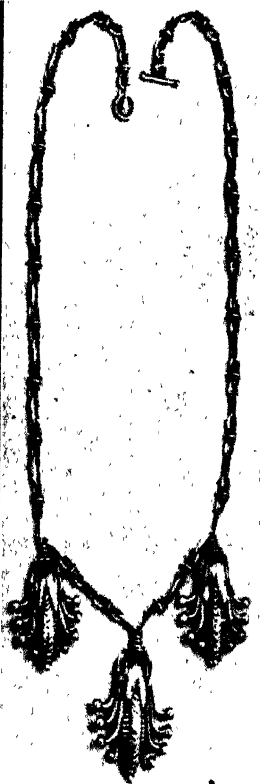
*Polishing*  
p. 71

Buff with a felt buffing wheel.

Polish with a chamois buffing wheel and rouge.

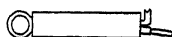


*Units soldered together to form the motif—  
wire coil, balls, stamped forms, repoussé leaves*

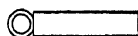
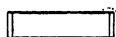
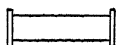


*Necklace of chain with three  
motifs*

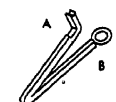
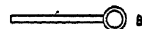
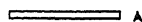
## CLASP—TUBE SOCKET AND SPRING CATCH



## SOCKET



## CATCH



Socket—Tube.

Catch—Spring.

Socket—Sterling silver sheet annealed 20-gauge.

Make a tube  $\frac{3}{16}$  inch in diameter, and  $\frac{5}{8}$  inch long.

Solder the seam and silver sheet over each end. Make sure there is an air escape.

Drill a hole in center of one end.

File the soldered ends even with the tube and the hole square.

Sterling silver wire 20-gauge.

Make a small ring. File flat at the joint.

Solder the flat side in the center of the plate opposite the drilled end.

Catch—Sterling silver wire oblong  $\frac{1}{16}$  inch by  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch.

Saw A  $\frac{5}{8}$  inch and B  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch.

Score and bend A at right angles to the  $\frac{1}{8}$ -inch face  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch from the end.

File the end of A in a groove and file half way through the  $\frac{1}{16}$ -inch thickness, at the angle; the notch should be the width of 20-gauge metal.

Sterling silver wire 20-gauge.

Make a small ring as above.

Solder to the end of the wire B.

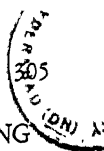
Bind A and B together at the end.

Solder the joint.

Hammer the end on a steel plate. File edges. Clean, polish, and color.

Fig. 101. — Clasp, tube socket and spring catch

# JEWELRY MAKING



## CLASP—TUBE SOCKET AND SPRING CATCH

Fig. 101

Type  
of  
Clasp

Tube socket.

Spring catch.

The following sheet metal and wire are required:

Sterling silver sheet 20-gauge for the socket and for the ends of the socket.

Sterling silver wire 20-gauge for the rings.

Sterling silver wire 10-gauge drawn  $\frac{1}{16}$  inch by  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch for the catch.

Tools  
and  
Working  
Materials

Metal gauge	Draw tongs
Gas and air blow torch	Flux
Charcoal block	Borax slate or saucer
Pickle	Solder
Copper pickle pan	Camel's hair brush
Copper tongs	Center punch
Gas plate	Hand drill
File	Twist drill #70
Ruler	Mandrel $\frac{1}{8}$ inch round
Dividers	Square hole draw plate
Jeweler's shears	Bench pin
Block of hard wood with semi-circular groove	Jeweler's saw frame
Raising hammer with thin neck or chasing tool	Jeweler's saw blades
	Snub nose pliers
	Binding wire flattened
Wax	Binding wire
Bench vise	Steel surface plate
Round hole draw plate	Flat-face steel hammer
Burnisher or knife	Scotch stone

<i>Tools</i>	Polishing motor	Soft cloth
<i>and</i>	Felt buffing wheel	Rouge stick
<i>Working</i>	Tripoli cake	Cloth buffing wheel
<i>Materials</i>	Soda, ammonia, water solution	Potassium sulphide so- lution
	Granite pan	Whiting

## PROCESSES

## SOCKET

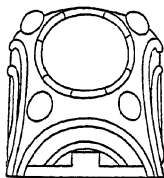
<i>Gauging</i> p. 346	Gauge the metal.
<i>Annealing</i> p. 18	Anneal the metal.
<i>Pickling</i> p. 22	Clean in pickle.
<i>Tube</i> <i>Drawing</i> p. 98	Sterling silver sheet 20-gauge. Make a tube $\frac{3}{16}$ -inch diameter by $\frac{5}{8}$ inch long.
<i>Soldering</i> p. 38	Solder a piece of silver to close end of the tube. (See Special Soldering, p. 45. Soldering hollow pieces to flat surfaces.) Solder the seam of the tube at the same time.
<i>Filing</i> p. 25	File the end pieces even with the tube.
<i>Drilling</i> p. 35	Mark and drill a hole in the center of the plate soldered at one end of the tube.
<i>Filing</i>	File the drilled hole $\frac{1}{8}$ inch square.
<i>Ring</i> <i>Making</i> p. 112	Sterling silver wire 20-gauge. Make a ring, file it flat at the joint.
<i>Soldering</i>	Solder the flat side of the ring in the center of the plate opposite the drilled end.

## PROCESSES

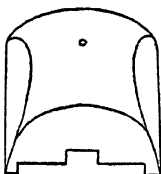
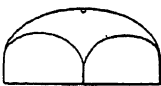
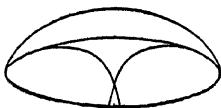
## CATCH

<i>Wire</i>	Sterling silver wire 10-gauge.
<i>Drawing</i> p. 96	Draw the wire $\frac{1}{16}$ inch by $\frac{1}{8}$ inch.
<i>Annealing</i>	Anneal the wire.
<i>Sawing</i> p. 31	Saw two lengths of wire A $\frac{5}{8}$ inch and B $\frac{3}{4}$ inch as shown in Fig. 101.
<i>Scoring</i> p. 157	Score A on the $\frac{1}{8}$ -inch face $\frac{1}{8}$ inch from the end.
<i>Bending</i>	Bend at a right angle.
<i>Soldering</i>	Solder at the angle.
<i>Filing</i>	File A at the angle on the $\frac{1}{8}$ -inch face half way through the $\frac{1}{16}$ -inch thickness of the wire. Let this groove be the width of 20-gauge metal. File the end of A in a groove as shown in Fig. 101.
<i>Ring Making</i>	Sterling silver wire 20-gauge. Make a ring as above.
<i>Soldering</i>	Solder on the end of wire B.
<i>Binding</i>	Bind A and B together. Insert flat binding wire $\frac{1}{4}$ inch from the end between A and B.
<i>Soldering</i>	Solder the ends of A and B.
<i>Pickling</i>	Clean in pickle.
<i>Hammering</i>	Hammer the soldered ends of A and B on a steel plate to harden.
<i>Filing</i>	File to make smooth and even.
<i>Cleaning</i> p. 70	Remove excess solder with a file and scotch stone.
<i>Polishing</i> p. 71	Buff with felt buffing wheel and tripoli. Polish with a cloth buffing wheel and rouge.

## CLASP DESIGN



SOCKET



## CLASP—SQUARE SOCKET

Socket—Dome on a flat foundation.

Ornament—Dome, wire units, and balls.

Socket

Sterling silver sheet annealed 24-gauge.

Inscribe a circle on the metal.

Cut out the disk.

Dome the disk.

Divide the base in four equal parts.

Draw a semi-circle from each point on the inside of the dome.

Trace the lines with a chasing tool.

Cut a V-shaped piece from each of the four points.

Bring the sides together until they meet.  
Solder the joints.

File the base even.

Punch a hole in the top of the dome.

Saw one side at the base; the depth should be the thickness of 18-gauge metal and leave a border about  $\frac{1}{16}$  inch at each end.

Saw or file a notch in the center of the sawed side  $\frac{1}{16}$  inch in width and the depth of 18-gauge metal.

Clean and polish.

*Fig. 102.—Clasp, square socket, with wire and balls*



## Ornament

Sterling silver sheet 26-gauge.

Cut and dome a disk.

Fine silver wire 20-gauge.

Bend four wires the same curve as the chased lines on the socket.

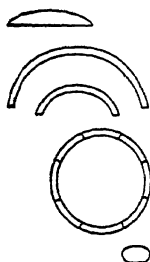
Bend four shorter wires the same curve.

Make a ring to fit around the dome.

Notch the ring at intervals.

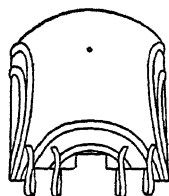
Make four balls; flatten slightly.

ORNAMENT

JOINING THE ORNAMENT  
AND THE SOCKET

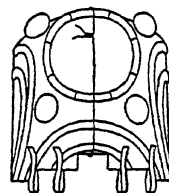
## Joining the Ornament and the Socket

Bind and solder the eight wires to the four sides of the socket.



Bind and solder the dome and ring to the center top.

Solder the four balls in the corner spaces.

JOINING THE SOCKET  
AND THE FOUNDATION

## Joining the Socket and the Foundation

Sterling silver sheet 24-gauge.

Cut the sheet silver slightly larger than the base of the socket.

Bind the socket to the silver foundation.

Solder in place.

Saw and file the foundation even with the base of the socket.

File all edges smooth.

Clean and polish.

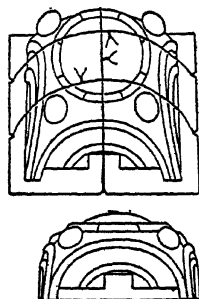
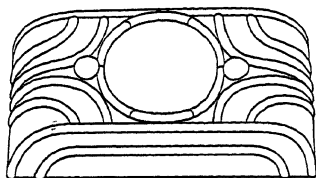


Fig. 103.—Clasp, square socket, with wire and balls



SOCKET

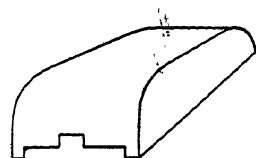
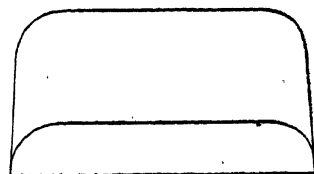
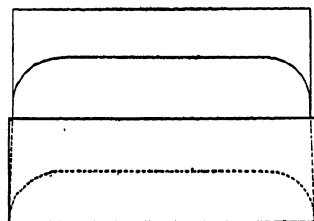
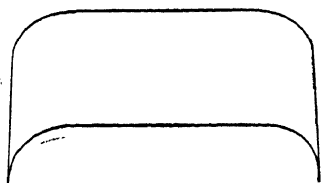


Fig. 104.—Clasp, oblong socket decorated with wire and balls

## CLASP—OBLONG SOCKET

Socket—Curved form on a flat foundation.

Ornament—Dome, wire units, and balls.

### Socket

Sterling silver sheet 24-gauge.

Cut an oblong piece of silver.

Curve the silver slightly to form an arch.

Solder sheet silver over one of the open sides of the socket.

Saw and file even with the curved outline.

Repeat with the other opening of the socket.

Saw an opening on the narrow end and notch the center.

Proceed as described in the square socket.

Ornament made to conform to the oblong shape.

Join to the foundation as described in the square socket.

Clean and polish.

## SPRING CATCH

CATCH

Sterling silver sheet 24-gauge.

Cut a strip of silver:

Length—twice the length of the socket.

Width—the size of the sawed opening.

Sterling silver wire or sheet 18-gauge  $\frac{1}{16}$  inch wide.

Loop the end of the wire.

Solder the unit of wire to the strip of silver.

Divide the strip of silver.

Bend over the blade of a knife.

Hammer the bent end to harden.

File to fit the opening.

Clean and polish.

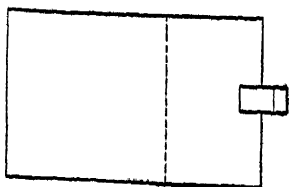


Fig. 105.—Spring catch

CLASP—SQUARE AND OBLONG  
SOCKET AND SPRING CATCH

Figs. 102, 103, 104, 105

*Type  
of  
Clasp*

Square socket—oblong socket.

Spring catch.

The following sheet metal and wire are required:

Sterling silver sheet 24-gauge for the socket, foundation, and the catch.

Sterling silver sheet 26-gauge for the small dome.

Fine silver wire 20-gauge for the wire decoration and the balls.

Sterling silver wire or sheet 18-gauge,  $\frac{1}{16}$  inch wide, for the catch.

Nickel silver 24-gauge may also be used for the catch.

*Tools  
and  
Working  
Materials*

Metal gauge

Gas and air blow torch

Charcoal block

Pickle

Copper pickle pan

Copper tongs

Gas plate

Dividers

Jeweler's shears

Lead dapping block

Dapping die cutters  
and punches

Dapping die hammer

Chasing tool

Chasing hammer

Snub nose pliers

Flat file

Small pointed punch

Jeweler's saw frame

Jeweler's saw blade

#1/0

Bench pin

Scotch stone

Polishing motor

Felt buffing wheel

Tripoli cake

Soda, ammonia, and  
water solution

Small stiff scrub brush

Cloth buffing wheel

<i>Tools</i>	Rouge stick	Bench vise
<i>and</i>	Round nose pliers	Oblong hole draw
<i>Working</i>	Round mandrel the	plate
<i>Materials</i>	size of the small	Draw tongs
	dome	Steel plate
	Round mandrel for	Steel hammer
	balls	Potassium sulphide so-
	Triangular file	lution
	Binding wire	Whiting
	26-gauge	Soft cloth
	Bristle buffing wheel	Soft cloth or chamois
		buffing wheel

## PROCESSES

## SQUARE SOCKET

<i>Gauging</i> p. 346	Gauge the metal.
<i>Annealing</i> p. 18	Anneal the metal.
<i>Pickling</i> p. 22	Clean in pickle.
<i>Dome</i> <i>Making</i> p. 120	Sterling silver sheet 24-gauge. Cut a disk with dapping cutters or jeweler's shears. Dome the disk.
<i>Measuring</i>	Divide the base of the dome in four equal parts. Draw a semicircle on the inside of the dome with the dividers from the four marked points.
<i>Chasing</i> p. 77	Place the dome on a lead dapping block convex side up. Trace the marked semicircle with a chasing tool.
<i>Cutting</i>	Cut four V-shaped pieces from each of the four corners.

## PROCESSES

*Shaping*

Pull the sides together with the snub nose pliers until the edges of the V are brought together.

*Soldering*

p. 38

Solder the four corners.

*Pickling*

Clean in pickle.

*Filing*

p. 25

File the base even. This should make a square form with sloping sides, the top slightly rounded.

*Punching**Sawing*

p. 31

Punch a small hole in the center of the dome.

Saw one side of the base to within  $\frac{1}{16}$  inch of each corner; the depth should be .040 or the thickness of 18-gauge metal.

Saw a notch in the center of the sawed side  $\frac{1}{16}$  inch wide and the depth of 18-gauge metal.

*Cleaning*

p. 70

Clean with scotch stone.

Polish with a felt buffing wheel and tripoli.

## SEPARATE PARTS OF THE ORNAMENT

*Dome**Making*

Sterling silver sheet annealed 26-gauge.

Cut and dome a disk to fit in the center of the socket dome. Leave about  $\frac{1}{16}$  inch flat space from the base of the small dome to the chased lines.

*Shaping*

Fine silver wire 20-gauge.

Bend four wires semicircular to fit the curve of the chased line on the socket dome.

Bend four shorter wires the same curve.

*Ball**Making*

p. 122

Make four balls and flatten slightly.

## PROCESSES

<i>Ring Making</i> p. 112	Make a ring to fit around the small dome.
<i>Soldering</i> p. 38	Solder the joint.
<i>Filing</i>	File notches at intervals around the ring.

## JOINING THE ORNAMENT AND THE SOCKET

<i>Binding</i>	Bind with cotter pins the eight wires to the four sides.
<i>Soldering</i>	Solder in place.
<i>Pickling</i>	Clean in pickle.
<i>Binding</i>	Bind the ring and dome to the center of the socket.
<i>Soldering</i>	Solder the four balls on the four corners next to the wire ring.

## JOINING THE SOCKET AND THE FOUNDATION

<i>Soldering</i>	Sterling silver sheet 24-gauge. Bind and solder the socket on the silver.
<i>Pickling</i>	Clean in pickle.
<i>Sawing</i>	Saw the edges even with the sides.
<i>Filing</i>	File the edges to smooth.
<i>Cleaning</i>	Remove any scratches or excess solder with a file and scotch stone.
<i>Polishing</i> p. 71	Buff with bristle buffing wheel and tripoli. Polish with cloth buffing wheel and rouge.

## PROCESSES

## OBLONG SOCKET

<i>Gauging</i>	Gauge the metal.
<i>Annealing</i>	Anneal the metal.
<i>Pickling</i>	Clean in pickle.
<i>Cutting</i>	Sterling silver sheet 24-gauge. Cut an oblong piece of silver.
<i>Filing</i>	File the edges even.
<i>Shaping</i>	Curve the silver slightly. Bend the ends at a slight angle.
<i>Soldering</i> p. 38	Lay the bent strip on the silver sheet so the entire opening on one of the curved sides is covered. Solder in place.
<i>Sawing</i> p. 31	Saw the applied piece even with the curve and straight across the base. Repeat with the other open side.
<i>Filing</i> p. 25	File to smooth all edges. Proceed as described in the square socket: Decoration may have to be added or changed somewhat to conform to the oblong shape. Cut opening. Decorate. Mount on a foundation.

## PROCESSES

## CATCH

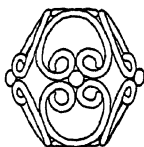
<i>Gauging</i>	Gauge the metal. Sterling silver 24-gauge.
<i>Measuring</i>	Measure twice the length of the socket, the width the size of the opening in the socket.



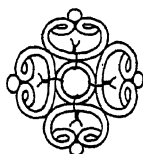
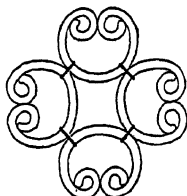
## PROCESSES

- Drawing*  
*or*  
*Rolling*  
*Wire*  
p. 96  
Draw a piece of wire through the rectangular draw plate to measure 18-gauge in thickness and  $\frac{1}{16}$  inch in width. The wire may also be rolled in the rolling mill to this measurement.
- Annealing*  
Anneal the wire and sheet.
- Bending*  
Loop the end of the wire.
- Soldering*  
Solder the bent wire in the center of one end of the measured length with the curved end of the wire up.
- Measuring*  
Divide the strip in two parts, the section holding the unit the shorter.
- Bending*  
Fold over a thin piece of steel such as a steel knife blade on the line so the soldered unit is on top.
- Hammering*  
Hammer the folded end on a steel plate to harden the metal.
- Filing*  
File the edges to fit the opening.
- Cleaning*  
p. 70  
Remove any scratches or excess solder with a file or scotch stone.
- Polishing*  
p. 71  
Buff with a felt buffing wheel and tripoli.  
Polish with a cloth buffing wheel and rouge.
- Coloring*  
p. 72  
Color the socket and catch with potassium sulphide solution.  
Remove any excess color with whiting.  
Polish with cotton buffing wheel.

## OPENWORK BEAD DESIGN



## CONSTRUCTION

OPEN-WORK BEAD OF WIRE UNITS  
AND BALLS

Foundation and Ornament—Round bead of wire units and balls.

Construction.

Sterling silver wire annealed 18-gauge.

Saw eight pieces of wire the measured length.

Bend to form curved units.

Bind and solder four units together to form a motif.

Repeat with the other four units.

Dome the two motifs.

Bind and solder the two domes together to form a bead.

Fine silver wire.

Make four balls.

Make two rings to fit the openings on each end of the bead.

Solder the rings and the four balls in the center of the four circles formed by the motifs.

Bind and solder the two rings on each end of the bead.

Clean, polish, and color.

Fig. 106.—Open work bead of wire

# OPEN-WORK BEAD OF WIRE UNITS AND BALLS

Fig. 106

*Type  
of  
Bead*

Foundation and Ornament—Round bead of wire units and balls.

The following silver wire is required:

Sterling silver wire 18-gauge for the bead.

Fine silver wire for the balls and rings.

*Tools  
and  
Working  
Materials*

Metal gauge	Wooden dapping
Gas and air blow torch	punch
Charcoal block	Mallet
Pickle	Binding wire
Copper pickle pan	26-gauge
Copper tongs	Small round mandrel
Gas plate	Riffle file
Jeweler's saw frame	Scotch stone
Jeweler's saw blade	Polishing motor
#1/0	Bristle buffing wheel
Round nose pliers	Tripoli cake
Steel tweezers	Soda, ammonia, and
Staples of binding wire	water solution
Flux	Granite pan
Borax slate or saucer	Cloth buffing wheel
Jeweler's shears	Potassium sulphide so-
Solder	lution
Camel's hair brush	Whiting
Dapping die block	Chamois buffing wheel

## PROCESSES

*Gauging*

p. 346

*Annealing*

p. 18

Construction

Gauge the wire.

Sterling silver wire 18-gauge.

Anneal the wire.

## PROCESSES

*Pickling*

p. 22

Clean in pickle.

*Sawing*

p. 31

Saw one piece of wire the desired length.

Saw seven pieces the length of the measured piece.

*Shaping  
the**Units* \*

Form a circle on both ends of the wire with the round nose pliers.

Repeat the above with the other seven pieces of wire.

Bring the ends together with the circles on the inside to form units as shown in Fig. 106.

*Joining  
the**Wire**Units*

Place the four curved units on the charcoal block to form a motif as shown in Fig. 106.

Each unit must touch the unit on the right and left and the spacing must be even.

Pin to the charcoal block as shown in Fig. 12.

Repeat the above with the other four units.

*Soldering*

p. 38

Solder the wires where they touch.

*Doming*

p. 120

Place the motif in a hole in the dapping die slightly larger than the diameter of the motif.

Dap the motif until it fits the curve of the hole.

Remove and place in the next smaller hole.

Repeat until the motif is in the shape of a half sphere.

Repeat the above with the second motif; it must be the same size and shape as the first motif.

*Binding*

p. 46

Bind the two motifs together.

*Soldering*

Solder the motifs.

## PROCESSES

*Ball*

Fine silver wire.

*Making*

Make four balls.

p. 122

*Ring*

Make two rings to fit the opening on each end of the bead.

*Making*

p. 112

*Soldering*

Bind and solder the two rings and the four balls in place.

*Cleaning*

Clean in pickle, remove any scratches or excess solder with a file or scotch stone.

p. 70

*Polishing*

Buff with a bristle buffing wheel and tripoli.

p. 71

Polish with a cloth buffing wheel.

*Coloring*

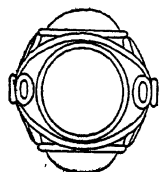
Color with potassium sulphide solution.

p. 72

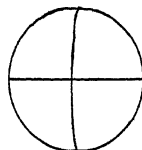
Remove any excess color with whiting.

Polish with a soft cloth or chamois buffing wheel.

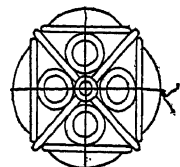
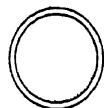
## ROUND BEAD DESIGN



FOUNDATION



ORNAMENT

ROUND BEAD DECORATED WITH  
WIRE AND DOMES

Foundation—Round bead.

Ornament—Wire and domes.

## Foundation

Silver sheet annealed 26-gauge.

Cut and dome two disks.

Drill holes in the center of each dome.

Bind and solder.

## Ornament

Fine silver wire 18-gauge.

Cut four wires  $\frac{1}{16}$  inch longer than half the circumference of the bead foundation.

Shape the wires the contour of the bead.

Insert the wire ends in the drilled holes.

Divide the bead into four equal parts with the wire.

Drill a hole in the foundation in each of four sections formed by the wires.

Make four rings to fit between these sections.

Fine silver wire 20-gauge.

Make eight rings to fit the spaces at each end.

Fine silver wire 22-gauge.

Make two rings to fit around the holes in the ends of the bead.

Fine silver sheet 26-gauge.

Cut and dome four disks the inside diameter of the largest ring.

Bind and solder the wires and domes to the foundation.

Clean, polish, and color.

Fig. 107. — Round bead decorated with wires and domes

# ROUND BEAD DECORATED WITH WIRE AND DOMES

Fig. 107

*Type  
of  
Bead*

Foundation—Round bead.

Ornament—Wire and domes.

The following silver sheet and wire are required:

Sterling silver sheet 26-gauge for the foundation and domes of the ornament. A commercial bead may be used for the foundation if desired.

Fine silver wire 18-gauge for the four half circles and large rings.

Fine silver wire 20-gauge for the eight medium rings.

Fine silver wire 22-gauge for the two small rings.

*Tools  
and  
Working  
Materials*

Metal gauge	Twist drill
Charcoal block	Binding wire
Gas and air blow torch	26-gauge
Pickle	Ruler
Copper pickle pan	Jeweler's shears
Copper tongs	Flux
Gas plate	Borax slate or saucer
Lead dapping block	Solder
Dapping cutters and punches	Camel's hair brush
Dapping die	Square nose pliers
File	Round mandrels—three sizes
Dividers	Scotch stone
Hammer	Polishing motor
Center punch	Tripoli cake
Hand drill	

<i>Tools</i>	Bristle buffing wheel	Potassium sulphide so-
<i>and</i>	Soda, ammonia, and	lution
<i>Working</i>	water solution	Whiting
<i>Materials</i>	Cloth buffing wheel	Soft cloth or chamois
	Rouge stick	polishing wheel.

## FOUNDATION

## PROCESSES

*Gauging*

p. 346

Gauge the metal.

*Annealing*

p. 18

Sterling silver sheet 26-gauge.

Anneal the metal.

*Pickling*

p. 22

Clean in pickle.

*Dome**Making*

p. 120

Cut and dome two disks of equal size. Each dome must be a half sphere if the bead is to be round.

*Filing*

p. 25

File the base of the domes even.

*Drilling*

p. 35

Make a depression with the center punch in the center of each dome.

Drill holes as marked with the center punch.

*Soldering*

p. 38

Bind and solder the two domes together.

## ORNAMENT

*Cutting*

Fine silver wire 18-gauge.

Cut four wires  $\frac{1}{16}$  inch longer than half the circumference of the bead.

Shape the wire the contour of the bead foundation.



## PROCESSES

*Placing  
the  
Wires*

Insert the wire ends in the holes of the bead.  
Make sure the bead is divided by the wires into four equal parts and the wires must touch the bead at all points.

*Drilling*

Drill a hole in the foundation in the center of each of the four sections formed by the wires.

*Ring  
Making*  
p. 112

Make four rings to fit these sections.

*Ring  
Making*

Fine silver wire 20-gauge.  
Make eight rings to fit the triangular sections formed by the wires.  
Fine silver wire 22-gauge.  
Make two rings to fit around the holes in each end of the bead.

*Dome  
Making*

Sterling silver sheet 26-gauge.  
Cut and dome four disks the inside diameter of the four rings.

JOINING THE ORNAMENT AND THE  
FOUNDATION*Soldering*

Bind and solder the rings and domes in place.

*Cleaning*  
p. 70

Remove scratches and excess solder with a file and scotch stone.

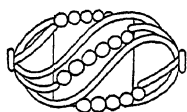
*Polishing*  
p. 71

Buff with a bristle buffing wheel and tripoli.  
Polish with a cloth buffing wheel and rouge.

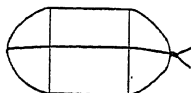
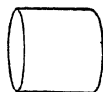
*Coloring*  
p. 72

Color with potassium sulphide solution.  
Remove any excess solder with whiting.  
Polish with a chamois buffing wheel.

## OVAL BEAD DESIGN



## FOUNDATION



## ORNAMENT

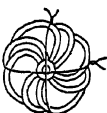
JOINING THE ORNAMENT  
AND THE FOUNDATION

Fig. 108.—Oval bead  
decorated with wire  
and balls

OVAL BEAD DECORATED WITH  
WIRE AND BALLS

Foundation—Oval bead.

Ornament—Wire and balls.

Foundation

Silver sheet 26-gauge.

Cut and bend an oblong strip of silver.

Bind and solder the seam.

Form into a cylinder.

Cut and dome two disks the diameter of the cylinder.

Drill a small hole in the center of each dome.

File the edges.

Solder the domes one on each end of the cylinder to form a bead.

Clean and polish.

Ornament

Fine silver wire 18-gauge.

Cut four wires  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch longer than the bead and eight wires one-third as long as the bead.

Shape the wires to fit the foundation.

Make 24 graduated silver balls to fit between the ends of the small wires.

Make two rings to fit around the holes of the bead.

Joining the ornament and the foundation.

Bind and solder the wires to the foundation.

Solder the balls and rings in place.

Clean, polish, and color.

# OVAL BEAD DECORATED WITH WIRE AND BALLS

Fig. 108

Type  
of  
Bead

Foundation—Oval bead.

Ornament—Wire and balls.

The following sheet silver and wire are required:

Sterling silver sheet 26-gauge for the foundation.

Fine silver wire 18-gauge for the wire bands and balls.

Tools  
and  
Working  
Materials

Metal gauge	Dapping cutters and punches
Ruler	Dapping die block
Charcoal block	Center punch
Gas and air blow torch	Hand drill
Pickle	Twist drill #60
Copper pickle pan	Scotch stone
Copper tongs	Polishing motor
Gas plate	Felt buffing wheel
Flat file	Tripoli cake
Dividers	Soda, ammonia, and water solution
Jeweler's shears	Granite pan
Flat nose pliers	Cloth buffing wheel
Iron binding wire 26-gauge	Rouge stick
Flux	Potassium sulphide solution
Borax slate or saucer	Whiting
Solder	Chamois polishing wheel
Camel's hair brush	
Round mandrel	
Mallet	
Lead dapping block	

## PROCESSES

## FOUNDATION

*Gauging*

p. 346

Gauge the metal.

*Annealing*

p. 18

Sterling silver sheet 26-gauge. Anneal the metal.

*Laying**out the**Pattern*

Determine the diameter and length of the bead.

*Cutting*

Cut an oblong strip of silver. The length should be three and one-seventh times the diameter of the collar which forms the center part of the bead as shown in Fig. 108. The width of the strip plus the two domes determines the length of the bead.

*Bending*

Bend so the two edges meet.

*Binding*

Bind to make an even joint.

*Soldering*

p. 38

Solder the seam.

*Shaping*

Tap lightly over a round mandrel with a rawhide or wooden mallet to form a cylinder.

*Filing*

p. 25

File the edges even.

*Dome**Making*

p. 120

Cut and dome two disks. The base of the domes should be the diameter of the cylinder.

*Drilling*

p. 35

Drill holes in the center of each dome.

*Filing*

File the base of each dome even.

## PROCESSES

*Soldering*

Bind and solder the domes on each end of the cylinder to form a bead.

*Cleaning*

p. 70

Clean in pickle.

Remove any scratches or excess solder with file and scotch stone.

*Polishing*

p. 71.

Buff with a felt buffing wheel and tripoli.

## ORNAMENT

*Cutting*

Fine silver wire 18-gauge.

Cut four pieces of wire  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch longer than the length of the bead.

Cut eight pieces of wire one-third as long as the bead.

*Forming*

Curve the four wires to fit the foundation as shown in Fig. 108.

Curve the short wires slightly.

*Ball**Making*

Make enough small balls to fit between the ends of the small wires.

*Ring**Making*

Make two rings to fit around the holes in the end of the bead.

JOINING THE ORNAMENT AND  
THE FOUNDATION*Placing**the**Wires*

Insert the ends of the long wires in the holes of the bead.

Make sure the bead is divided into four equal parts.

*Soldering*

Bind and solder the wires to the foundation.

Solder the eight short wires between the four long wires and the rings and balls in place as shown in Fig. 108.

## PROCESSES

*Cleaning*

p. 70

Clean in pickle; remove any scratches or excess solder with a file and scotch stone.

*Polishing*

p. 71

Buff with a bristle buffing wheel and tripoli.  
Polish with a cloth buffing wheel.

*Coloring*

p. 72

Color in a potassium sulphide solution.  
Remove excess color with whiting.  
Polish with a soft cloth or chamois buffing wheel.

## V. STONES

Hardness of Stones

Translucent Stones

Opaque Stones

Transparent Stones

---

# STONES

---

The value of a stone is determined by beauty of color, transparency (in most instances), hardness or ability to resist abrasion, and rarity, according to authorities on gems. Synthetic stones may have three of these qualities but they are not rare, and, therefore, do not have the value of rare gems. G. F. Herbert Smith and Herbert P. Whitlock, and other authorities on stones, as well as lapidaries, explain the characteristics and qualities of gems and their sources.

Stones are transparent, translucent, or opaque. Transparent ones are usually cut in facets, thus getting the reflections and refractions of light which give them lustre; translucent and opaque ones are usually cut cabochon or carved.

## HARDNESS OF STONES

Mohs's Scale of Hardness, the standard invented nearly a century ago, is still used to judge the hardness of stones. Hardness refers only to the scratchability of a stone, not necessarily to its brittleness or value.

Talc	1	Orthoclase	6
Gypsum	2	Quartz	7
Calcite	3	Topaz	8
Fluorspar	4	Corundum	9
Apatite	5	Diamond	10

From this single scale the stones ordinarily used in jewelry can be identified as to hardness and durability. The figures shown at the right of the stones given in the table shown below indicate the degree of hardness of each stone in terms of this basic table. A few stones are listed. A more complete list may be found in the books included in the Bibliography, pp. 365, 370, 371 and 372.



## TRANSLUCENT STONES

NAME	COLOR	HARDNESS
Agate	Various kinds	7
Amber	Yellow, shades of brown	2.5
Carnelian	Orange-red	7
Chalcedony	Blue-gray	7
Chrysophase	Light bright green	7
Jade	Light and dark green, white, also mauve, red, and yellow	6.7
Labradorite	Gray with blue-green lights	6
Moonstone	White with bluish light	6
Opal	Black or white with play of vari- ous colors	6
Sardonyx	Reddish brown	7
Rose Quartz	Light pink	7

## OPAQUE STONES

NAME	COLOR	HARDNESS
Coral	White, pink, oxblood	3.5
Lapis Lazuli	Azure to dark blue	5
Malachite	Green	3.5
Turquoise	Green-blue or sky blue	6
Onyx	White, black	7

## TRANSPARENT STONES

NAME	COLOR	HARDNESS
Alexandrite	Blue-green in daylight, red in artificial light.	8.5
Amber	Yellow, golden brown	2.5
Amethyst	Light or dark violet	7
Andradite	Shades of yellow and green	7
Variety of Garnet		
Garnet	Shades of red	7
Peridot	Yellow-green, dark green, and olive green	6.5
Smoky Quartz	Gray or brown	7
Topaz	Shades of yellow, blue-white, and pink	8
Tourmaline	Blue-green, green, pink, brown, yellow	7
Zircon	Red, green, yellow, orange	7.5

## APPENDICES

Solders and Fluxes—Types and Uses

Cleaning Materials and Solutions—Types and Uses

Preparation and Care of Tools and Materials

Wire Gauge Standards

Workshop—Floor Plan and Equipment

# APPENDICES

## SOLDERS AND FLUXES—TYPES AND USES

METALS	FLUX	SOLDER
Silver to Silver	Anti borax flux and water	Medium-flowing silver solder for a general use
Fine or Sterling	1 tablespoon 2 oz. water—dissolved Borax—prepared in sticks or cones Rubbed on slate with water Other fluxes for hard solder are available	Hard-flowing silver solder for (a) Built-up pieces which are heated many times (b) Pieces made of metal heavy enough to withstand much heat Easy-flowing silver solder for (a) Final soldering on certain types of built-up pieces (b) Delicate and light-weight pieces
Silver soldered to Gold	Fluxes as indicated	Silver solder as above
Gold soldered to Gold	Fluxes as indicated above	Gold solder the color of the gold
Silver soldered to Copper	Borax in any form used thick	Silver solder as above
Copper soldered to Copper	Borax in any form used thick	Silver solder as above
Tin to Tin	Zinc chloride one part, water one part Other fluxes for soft solder are available	Lead and tin solder

## CLEANING MATERIALS AND SOLUTIONS—TYPES AND USES

CLEANING METHODS	FORMULA	TO REMOVE
Pickle	Sulphuric acid (Immerse) 1 part acid 10 parts water Nitric acid (Immerse) 1 part acid 8 parts water Nitric acid (Dip) 50 parts acid 50 parts water Hydrofluoric acid (Dip)	Oxide from silver, gold, and copper Oxide from gold over 14-K Fire coat from silver Pickle from metal Residue left by abrasives on an enameled surface

CLEANING METHODS	FORMULA	TO REMOVE
Water	Cold water (Rinse)	Pickle from metal
	Heat (Immerse)	Powdered rouge from metal
	Repeat if necessary	Burned pitch from metal
	Hot water (Rinse)	Remaining pickle following cold water rinse
	Hot water and strong soap powder (Rub with soft brush)	Oil and loose particles of wax from wax pattern
Kerosene	Hot water (Immerse)	Oil left on metal from tripoli cake or rouge stick
	Washing soda, small amount of ammonia	Oil in recessed parts
	As above (Scrub with stiff brush)	Pitch from warm metal
	Any grade of kerosene (Rub with cloth or stiff brush)	Dry shellac from metal
Alcohol	Pure or denatured alcohol (Rub or soak if necessary)	Shellac, alcohol, dye solution from metal
		Oil from metal before transferring design with carbon paper
Paraffin	Melted paraffin (Brush with stiff brush)	Pitch or jeweler's cement from warm metal
CLEANING METHODS	TOOLS	TO REMOVE
Filing	File	Burrs, scratches, tool marks, and solder
Scraping	Scraper	Tool marks, and dullness from the metal
Burnishing	Burnisher (Rub)	
CLEANING METHODS	ABRASIVES	TO REMOVE
Buffing	Felt buffing wheel (Buff)	Scratches or irregularities on flat or rounded surfaces
Polishing	Tripoli cake	For recessed parts
	Bristle buffing wheel charged with tripoli cake (Buff)	For high polish
	Soft cloth or chamois buffing wheel charged with rouge (Buff)	Discoloration at the edge of an enameled surface
	Corundum stone and water (Rub)	Scratches on metal
	Scotch stone and water (Rub)	Scratches and tool marks
	Emery cloth (Rub)	Fire scale, lead particles which adhere to a surface hammered on lead
	Pumice powder (Rub)	Scratches and tool marks
	Ink eraser (Rub)	Oil from metal surface
	Whiting powder (Rub)	Tool marks and scratches during the carving process
		Oxidation after coloring

---

## PREPARATION AND CARE OF TOOLS AND MATERIALS

---

Tools often have to be mounted in handles, ground, tempered, and sharpened, before they are ready for use. Many have to be cleaned and oiled during the working processes. It is also necessary to keep them from scratching and chipping one another when put away. Some tools and materials are affected by dust and certain material deteriorates in light and air. Acids must be handled and stored with special care.

### THE GRAVER

The graver and the handle come separately. The graver has to be made shorter and inserted in the handle, ground, and sharpened before it is ready for use.

<i>Tools</i>	Bench vise
<i>and</i>	Mallet
<i>Working</i>	Polishing motor
<i>Materials</i>	Emery wheel
	Ruler
	Scratch awl
	Oil stone—hard
	Light oil
	Cloth dampened with kerosene

### PROCESSES

<i>Breaking off the End</i>	Place the graver in the bench vise with the untempered or pointed end extending above the jaws of the vise about one inch. Break this end off with a mallet. Remove from the vise.
-------------------------------------	--

## PROCESSES

*Pointing  
and  
Tempering  
the End*

Grind the end to a tapered point; dip in water at intervals. During the final grinding let the end become hot enough to turn a straw color. Dip immediately in water to harden. This prevents the end just ground from bending when forced into the wooden handle.

*Joining  
the  
Handle  
to the  
Graver*

Place the blade in the vise with the pointed end one inch above the jaws of the vise. Drive the wooden handle on the pointed end with the mallet. The blade must fit firmly in the center of the handle. Remove from the vise.

*Holding  
the  
Tool  
for  
Measuring*

Hold the tool in the right hand. Let the handle rest in the palm of the hand on the joints of the second and third fingers. Close the hand so the blade rests on the second joint of the first finger and the fingers curve around the handle in toward the palm. Place the ball of the thumb on the blade in the carving position as shown in Fig. 21. Scratch a line on the blade about  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch beyond the end of the thumb.

*Shortening  
the  
Graver*

Place the blade in the jaws of the bench vise with the scratched line even with the upper edge of the jaw. Break off the end which extends above the vise with a mallet. Place the emery wheel on the motor.

*Holding the  
Tool  
While  
Grinding*

Hold the tool in the right hand. Press the further end of the tool against the emery wheel with the first two fingers of the left hand.

## PROCESSES

*Grinding  
the  
Blade*

Grind the end of the blade on the emery wheel to a 45° angle. This is the cutting angle for gold, silver, and copper and other materials of the same hardness. This angle is cut greater if the material is harder and less if the material to be cut is softer.

Move the tool from side to side to prevent grooving the wheel.

Grinding discolors the end of the blade if the tool becomes too hot during the grinding. If this occurs grind off the discolored portion as the temper has been destroyed.

*Sharpening  
the  
Blade*  
p. 88

Sharpen the blade on the oil stone.

Reground the tool when the 45° angle is worn off.

## THE OIL STONE

During the sharpening process not only the center of the stone but the whole surface should be used. After the gravers have been sharpened repeatedly grooves will be worn into the stone. When the grooves become too deep the stone can be ground smooth.

*Tools  
and  
Working  
Materials*

Sheet of heavy glass  
Emery powder 8/0  
Ammonia  
Hot water  
Soft cloth



## PROCESSES

## GRINDING THE OIL STONE

*Grinding*

Place 8/0 emery powder on the glass sheet.  
 Place the oil stone with the grooved side on the emery and glass.  
 Grind the stone on the emery until the grooves have been removed.

*Washing*

Wash in ammonia and water.  
 Rinse in hot water.  
 Dry with a soft cloth.  
 Always remove the oil from the stone before putting away. Keep it in a covered container.

## FILES

The file and handle come separately. Only the smaller files, such as needle files, have the handle as part of the file.

A rack should be used to hold the large files when they are put away as shown in Fig. 114. A small holder or partitioned box can be used for the smaller files. The teeth of the files will become dull if allowed to rub on each other or other steel tools.

*Tools*

Bench vise

*and*

Brace and bit

*Working*

Wooden mallet

*Materials*

Chalk

File brush

## PROCESSES

*Holding*

Select the proper size handle for the file.  
 Place the wooden handle in the jaws of the bench vise with the flat side up.

## PROCESSES

<i>Drilling</i>	Drill a hole in the center of the handle.
<i>Mounting</i>	Place the point of the tang into the hole drilled for it. Drive the tang into the handle with a mallet until it reaches the shoulder of the file.
<i>Chalking</i>	Rub the teeth of the file with chalk. This helps to keep the teeth clean.
<i>Cleaning</i>	Clean files with a file brush if the teeth become clogged with metal filings. Files should be put away clean.

## STEEL HAMMERS AND STEEL STAKES

All working surfaces of the hammer and stake should be free from dents, scratches, and grit. A rack as shown in Fig. 114 should be used to hold them and protect their polished surfaces from scratches. To remove scratches or dents use coarse to fine abrasives depending upon the depth of the mark. Deep scratches or dents should be removed as follows: Place the stake or hammer in the vise. File in the lengthwise direction of the scratch or dent until the depth has been reached. Follow with corundum wheel, emery cloth, coarse to fine, felt buffing wheel and tripoli cake, and cloth buffing wheel and rouge.

## STEEL BURNISHER

Keep the burnisher well polished with chamois cloth and rouge. Wrap in a chamois cloth when not in use.

## DRAW PLATES

Dip draw plates in kerosene occasionally and keep in a clean drawer

## POLISHING MOTOR

Keep the motor clean and well oiled.

## BLOW TORCH

The blow torch becomes clogged with carbon if the yellow flame is left on for any length of time.

## ENAMELS

Enamels may be kept in chunks in covered boxes.

Powdered enamel should be kept in well-corked and labeled bottles. If dry, it can be kept for a long time. Enamel kept under water deteriorates in a short time.

## BUFFS

Bufs which are used for different abrasives should be kept in separate containers and away from dust and dirt.

## POTASSIUM SULPHIDE

Potassium sulphide is purchased in lump form and is yellow. It must be kept in a tightly covered can or dark bottle as it deteriorates in contact with air and somewhat in light. A quart or more of the solution may be kept ready for use. Keep in a covered jar.

## CUTTLE-BONE

Keep in a covered container to prevent them from becoming brittle and dry.

## SOLDERING NEST

Coil and twist light iron binding wire together to form a nest. Hammer slightly in the center. Bend four heavy wires over the

nest and twist them together under the nest to form a handle as shown in Fig. 11.

### PICKLE PAN

Keep the pickle pan free of pickle when not in use.

### PICKLE

A quart or more of pickle may be mixed in a porcelain or earthenware pitcher ready for use (1 part acid, 10 parts water). *Acid must be poured into the water.*

---

## GAUGES

---

Gauges are tools used to measure the thickness of metal and wire. The one commonly used by American gold and silversmiths is the Brown and Sharpe gauge. For steel wire and drill stock the American Steel Wire gauge is used. Gauges are made of metal carefully scaled to measure to .1, .01, .001 of an inch. The number designating the gauge appears on one side of the scale, as 18-gauge, and the decimal equivalent on the opposite side.

To measure the thickness of metal sheet or the diameter of wire, slip the slot in the gauge nearest the thickness over the metal and read the gauge number, as 18-gauge, or the decimal equivalent, if desired. Transposing from one standard to another can be done by use of the figures given in the comparative table (p. 347). Closer measurements, when required, can be obtained by using the micrometer.

The gauge numbers referred to in this book for various metals are measured by: The Brown and Sharpe gauge for gold and silver, American Steel Wire or Washburn and Moen gauge for drill stock,

---

COMPARATIVE TABLE OF DIFFERENT STANDARDS  
FOR SHEET-METAL AND WIRE GAUGES

---

NUMBER OF GAUGE	AMERICAN OR BROWN & SHARPE	AMERICAN STEEL AND WIRE COMPANY OR WASHBURN & MOEN MFG. CO.	BIRMINGHAM METAL GAUGE	BIRMINGHAM OR STUBS WIRE GAUGE
1	.2893	.2830	.0085	.300
2	.25763	.2625	.0095	.284
3	.22942	.2437	.0105	.259
4	.20431	.2253	.0120	.238
5	.18194	.2070	.0140	.220
6	.16202	.1920	.016	.203
7	.14428	.1770	.019	.180
8	.12849	.1620	.0215	.165
9	.11443	.1483	.024	.148
10	.10189	.1350	.028	.134
11	.090742	.1205	.032	.120
12	.080808	.1055	.035	.109
13	.071961	.0915	.038	.095
14	.064084	.0800	.043	.083
15	.057068	.0720	.048	.072
16	.05082	.0625	.051	.065
17	.045257	.0540	.055	.058
18	.040303	.0475	.059	.049
19	.03589	.0410	.062	.042
20	.031961	.0348	.065	.035
21	.028462	.0317	.069	.032
22	.025347	.0286	.073	.028
23	.022571	.0258	.077	.025
24	.0201	.0230	.082	.022
25	.0179	.0204	...	.020
26	.01594	.0181	...	.018
27	.014195	.0173	...	.016
28	.012641	.0162	...	.014
29	.011257	.0150	...	.013
30	.010025	.0140	...	.012

Example of use of table: Given gauge No. 20 on the Brown & Sharpe Gauge, which measures .031961, find the nearest decimal equivalent to .031961 on the Washburn & Moen Gauge which is found to be .0317 for which the corresponding gauge No. is 21.



*Courtesy of Camp Hanoum, Thetford, Vt.*

*Fig. 109.—Camp Workshop*

---

## THE WORKSHOP

---

Jewelry can be made in a comparatively small shop simply equipped. It is better to start with minimum essential tools than to expose the beginner to a lot of tools which will not be used for the simpler problems.

For classes of sixteen people eight benches which will accommodate two persons are required. For general work purposes a work bench, table sink, buffing machine, enameling oven, draw bench, book case, table, storage cupboards are necessary. Work space may be enlarged by adding individual benches, or reduced in size, but the general equipment should remain the same. An electric motor can be substituted for the buffing machine. The aisles

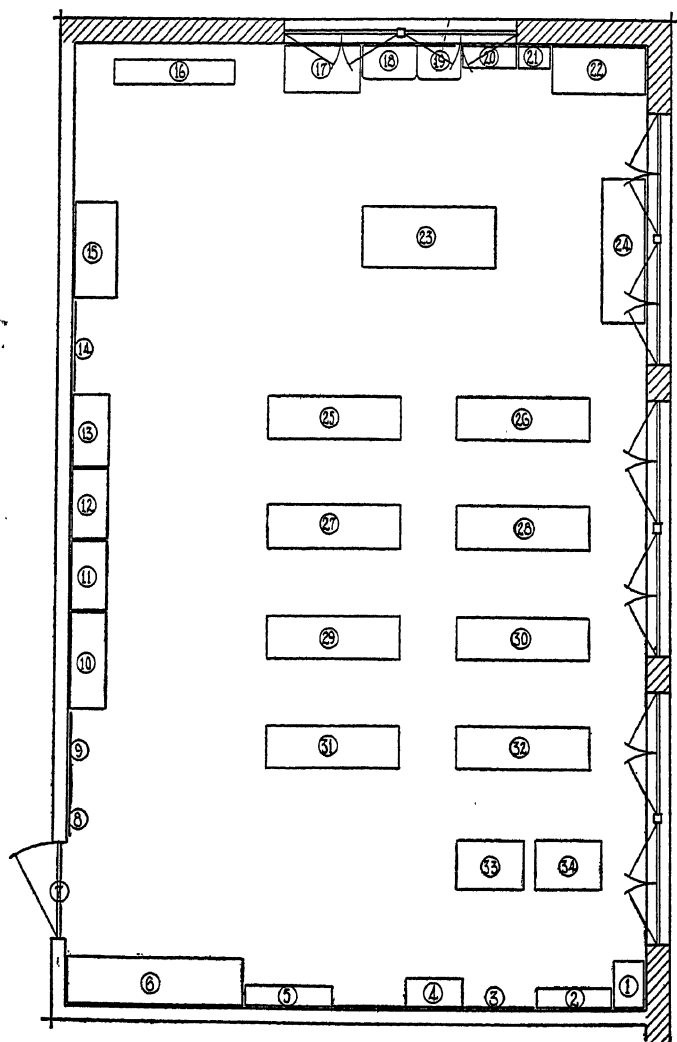


Fig. 110.—Floor plan for workshop

Scale:  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch = 1 foot

between the benches must be at least two and a half feet to allow for easy passing, an open area near the door. The light should come from the left of the worker if possible.

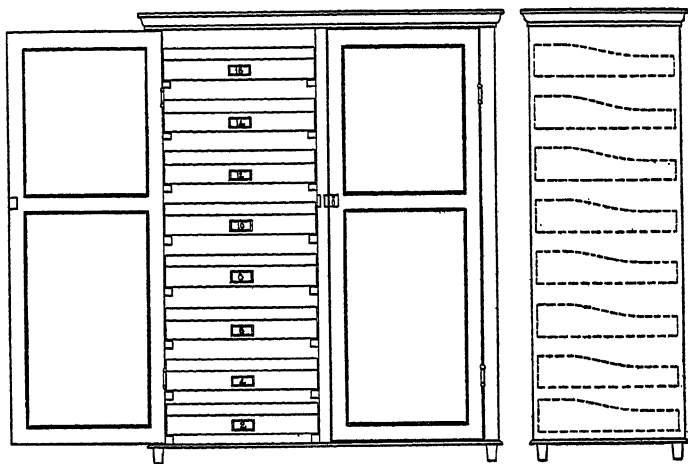
The benches in a camp shop may seat several workers and may be built parallel to the side openings if the shop is surrounded with trees or shrubs to soften the glare of the summer sun. The side walls of the shop may open up to form an awning for protection as shown in Fig. 109. Shadow boxes of asbestos can be used to shelter the flame of the torches when necessary.

Work bench and storage cupboards and a floor plan for a shop to accommodate sixteen persons are illustrated in Figs. 110, 111, 112, 113, and 114. Groups may use this shop alternately.

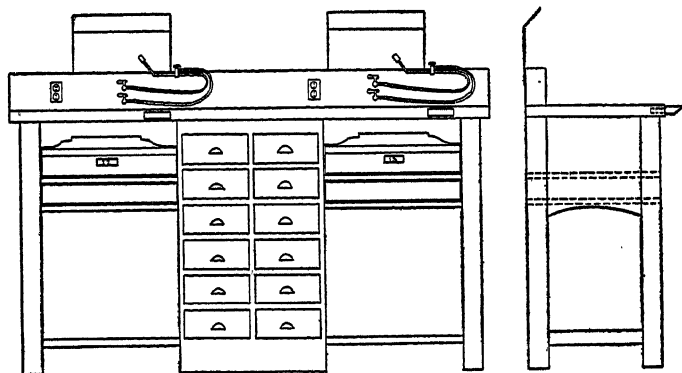
1. File case.
2. Book shelves.
3. Corkboard.
4. Glass show case.
5. Cupboard with shelves.
6. Closet with rod for coat hangers.
7. Entrance door.
8. Cork bulletin board.
9. Blackboard.
10. Drawer closet (See Fig. 111).
11. Tool closet (See Fig. 114).
12. Storage closet (See Fig. 113).
13. Storage closet (See Fig. 113).
14. Blackboard.
15. Enameling muffler.
16. Draw bench.
17. Cupboard the height of the sink with acid- and heat-resistant top.
18. Sink.
19. Drainboard, cupboard, and shelves below.
20. Shelf.
21. Cupboard with shelves.



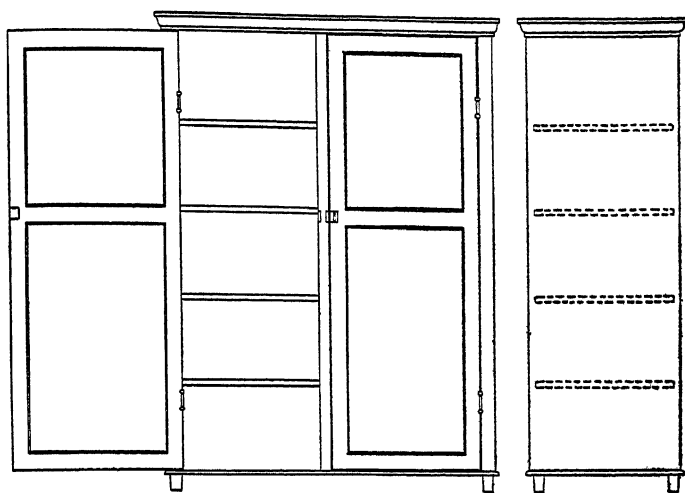
- 22. Polishing motor.
- 23. Stationary bench.
- 24. Table.
- 25-32. Work benches (See Fig. 112).
- 33. Table.
- 34. Desk.



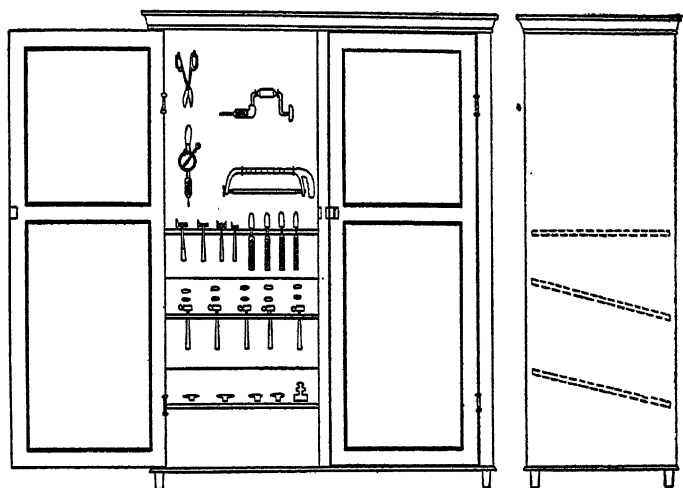
*Fig. 111.—Individual tool drawers*



*Fig. 112.—Work bench*



*Fig. 113.—Storage closet*



*Fig. 114.—Tool closet*

---

# GLOSSARY

---

**ABRASIVE**—A substance used to rub or wear away a surface.

**ADJUST**—To arrange, to fit, or to place in a position for operation.

**ANNEAL**—To make metal soft and pliable by heating.

**APPLIQUE**—The process of cutting out a piece or pattern from one material and laying it upon and attaching it to another.

**ASSEMBLE**—To fit and join together into usable form.

**BANGLE**—An ornamental circlet of metal or other material.

**BASSETAILLE**—A method of applying enamel, similar to *champlevé*.

**BEARING**—The edge of the flange inside the bezel which supports or bears the setting.

**BEZEL**—The collar of metal that holds the stone or gem.

**BENCH PIN**—A wedge-shaped block of wood affixed to a bench to support work during sawing or filing.



**BINDING WIRE**—Annealed iron wire used to hold parts together during the soldering process.

**BORAX SLATE**—A slab of slate containing a saucer-like hollow in which prepared borax or borum junk is rubbed in water to form flux.



**BOX**—A bezel formed by a separate strip shaped and soldered on the piece of jewelry to frame and hold the setting.

**BRACELET**—A band of metal or interwoven links of wire made to fit the arm or wrist.

**BROOCH**—An ornamental clasp provided with a pin or other means of fastening.

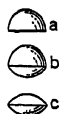
**BUFF**—To polish by light friction.

**BURNISH**—To make smooth and bright.

**BURNISHER**—A pointed steel tool with oval section used for burnishing.



**CABOCHON**—A term used to describe a stone curved in contour, polished, but not faceted.



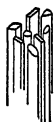
**CASTING**—Shaping objects by pouring or forcing molten metal into a form or mold.

**CHAMOIS**—A soft leather made from the skin of the chamois.

**CHAMPLEVÉ**—A method of fusing enamel into sunken surfaces in the metal.

**CHARCOAL BLOCK**—A block of chemically prepared charcoal, used to hold metal for soldering, annealing, and melting.

**CHASING TOOLS**—Steel implements with rounded ends similar to dull chisels, used to trace lines on surfaces of metal.



**CLASP**—A catch or a hook used as a fastener.

**CLOISONNÉ**—A process of enameling by laying out boundaries of flat wire and then filling between with the paste colors.

**COIL**—To twist or form wire and similar material spirally, cylindrically, or in a series of rings.

**COLLAR**—A metal band used for various construction purposes.

**CONTOUR**—The sectional form or outline of a figure or object.

**CONVENTIONAL**—A formalized or geometric representation of a natural or other object.

**COSTUME JEWELRY**—Necklaces, bracelets, buttons, clips, buckles, chains, earrings made to be used as accessories for costumes in the prevailing mode.

**COTTER PIN**—A small strip of iron formed into a clamp to hold parts together for soldering.



**CRADLE**—A sheet iron or nickel form bent and perforated to hold the enameled article in the furnace during the firing process. See Fig. 50.

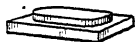
**CUTTERS**—Dapping die cutters, tools for stamping out thin disks of metal on a lead block.

**CUTTLE-BONE**—A material used to make molds in which rings and other articles can be cast.

CRUCIBLE—A clay pot used for melting metals.

DAPPING—A soft tapping or pounding.

DAPPING BLOCKS—Solid lead blocks used for various cutting and stamping processes.



DAPPING DIES—Metal blocks containing convex depressions of various curves and sizes, into which thin pieces of metal can be dapped into rounded contours.

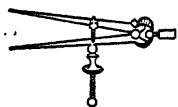


DAPPING DIE CUTTERS—Metal tools with tube-like cutting ends used to stamp out disks of thin metal on a lead or wooden block.

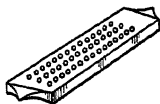
DAPPING PUNCHES—Domed steel tools used to dap hemispherical forms.

DENTIMETRE—A small handle in which wire can be held when measuring the circumference or girdle of a stone. See Fig. 57.

DIVIDERS—A steel instrument like a compass used to inscribe circles and divide lines.



DRAW PLATE—A flat piece of hardened steel pierced with holes in graduated sizes used to reduce the size or change the shape of wire.

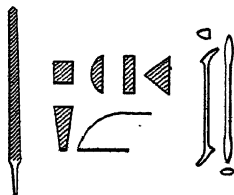


DRAW TONGS—Pliers having one handle hook-shaped to permit a firmer grasp.



ENAMEL—A vitreous material applied by fusion to metals such as gold and copper, usually for purposes of decoration.

FILE—A flat steel tool with rough faces used to smooth surfaces or to wear them down by rubbing away with friction. *Riffle file*—A bar with file at either end with or without curved points, the center portion serving as a handle.



FILIGREE—Delicate jewelry with lace-like qualities.

**FLANGE**—A rib or rim for re-enforcement set inside a bezel to form a bearing for the setting.

**FLUX**—Any substance which is used to aid the fusion of metals.

**FUNNEL**—A small cone-shaped passage through which molten metal is carried to the mold.

**FINE SILVER**—Pure silver free of alloy which melts at a higher temperature than sterling silver.

**GAUGE**—A term used to denote the thickness of plate or wire.

**GIRDLE**—The greatest circumference of a stone.

**GRAVERS**—Tools for carving or making fine lines and engraving.



**HAND DRILL**—A holder for the drill shank, often equipped with gears and shank to operate by hand.

**HOTTEST FLAME**—The point of the flame of the blow torch just above the tip of the oxygen cone, where the flame is the hottest.

**INLAY**—To lay or insert one piece of material in another, the finished surfaces of the parts being flush.

**INTERLINKED**—United together as are units of a chain.

**INTERWOVEN**—Woven together, or intermingled.

**INVESTMENT**—A plastic substance in which a pattern is placed to form a mold to be used for casting.

**INVESTMENT FLASK**—A brass cylinder fitting around the collar of the sprue former and encasing the investment.

**K.**—Abbreviation for the word karat.

**KARAT**—A unit of weight for gems or a standard measuring purity of metals as gold.

**LIMOGE**—The process used for pictorial work of painting on metal without a retaining wall.

**LIVER OF SULPHUR**—See potassium sulphide.

**MANDREL**—An axis or spindle of metal, sometimes slightly tapered to a point, used for shaping rings, links of a chain, or other bands of metal.

**MELTING FLAME**—The part of the flame of the blow torch just above the tip of the oxygen cone.

**MOTIF**—The theme or dominant feature of a design.


**MUFFLE**—An oven, ordinarily of clay and of half cylindrical form, used in operations that do not require direct heat.

**OIL STONE**—A smooth stone on which, when moistened with oil, tools are sharpened.

**ONGLETTE**—A point graver, sharply pointed.

**OPAQUE**—Permitting no passage of light.

**OXIDIZE**—To unite chemically with oxygen for the purpose of coloring.

**PAVED**—A term used to describe a setting sunken flush with the surface of the design. See Fig. 62. 

**PICKLE**—A specified mixture of water and a given acid used to clean metal.

**PIERCING**—Cutting out portions of a solid background, leaving the design in the metal.

**PITCH**—A prepared pitch in which articles are embedded during the processes of embossing, chasing, hammering, etc.

**PITCH BOWL**—A cast iron bowl into which prepared pitch is poured when ready for use.

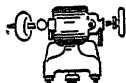


**PLIERS**—Steel tools with snub, round, or pointed jaws used to hold or to shape parts.



**PLIQUE À JOUR**—A system of applying enamel by placing the colored paste in the cells of fretwork, as of filigree or pierced metal, and then fusing it.

**POLISHING MOTOR**—A machine or hand tool fashioned for light friction or buffing.



**POTASSIUM SULPHIDE**—Commercially known as liver of sulphur, a substance used to color metals.

**PRIMITIVE ORNAMENT**—Decoration that has the simplicity, crudity, rudeness, or other characteristics of primitive and aboriginal peoples.

**PUMICE**—A volcanic stone in powdered form used for cleaning and buffing.

**PUSHER**—A stone-setting tool consisting of a small steel rod of square section, inserted in a round-shaped handle, used to push bezels or the points of crown settings around a stone.



**RAISE**—To raise is to fashion a piece of metal into shape by beating or pounding.

**RAWHIDE**—Untanned skin of cattle.

**REAMER**—A tool with a cutting edge which is employed to enlarge holes.

**RECESS**—An indentation in a line, surface, or mass.

**REDUCING FLAME**—The point of the flame of a blow torch lying about one-half inch from the tip of the oxygen cone, a trifle farther than the melting flame, at which point the heat is not so intense although hot enough to keep the metal molten.

**REPOUSSE**—The process of beating from the back to raise the design.

**RING CLAMP**—A device composed of two semi-conical members held together by a metal band.



**RING SIZES**—A series of graduated rings, clustered on a band and marked with standard ring sizes to measure fingers.



**ROUGE**—A red mineral powder mixed into a paste with water used to protect solder or metal from excessive heat during the soldering process.

**ROUGE STICK**—A buffing composition used for polishing.

**SAMPLER**—A project to demonstrate the employment of various tools, processes, methods, techniques, etc.

**SCORING**—Indenting or incising the surface.

**SCOTCH STONE**—Bars of prepared stone, used with water as an abrasive.

**SCRATCH AWL**—An awl made with a sharp, tapered point used for laying out work.





**SHELLAC**—An orange resinous flake substance used, as a rule, to hold articles in place for carving and setting of stones.

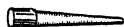
**SHELLAC MOUNTING STICK**—A tool consisting of a wooden disk with a handle on the flat surface of which shellac is melted.



**SHANK**—The band of a ring which fits around the finger.

**SOCKET**—A ring or hollow tube used to receive the catch of a clasp or fastener.

**SPINDLE**—A tapered and threaded shaft or axle attached to a motor to hold buffing and grinding wheels.



**SPLIT MANDREL**—A mandrel with a sawed slit in which wire may be inserted.

**SPRUE HOLE**—A hole through which metal is poured into the mold.

**SPRUE PIN**—The pin which holds the wax pattern in position in the investment.

**SPRUE FORMER**—A metal base to which the sprue pin is attached.

**STAKE**—A steel rod with highly polished surface upon which metal is hammered into shape.



**STERLING**—A standard of silver requiring 925 parts of silver to 75 of alloy.

**STONE LIFTER**—A prepared wax used to raise or lift a setting from its collar while fitting it to its bezel.

**STONING**—A process of rubbing with scotch stone.

**TEMPLATE**—A gauge, mold, or pattern, frequently formed of cardboard or thin plate, used as a guide in mechanical work.

**TRAGACANTH**—A flake gum mixed with warm water to form a paste.

**TRANSFERRING**—To carry from one thing to another.

**TRANSLUCENT**—Transmitting light imperfectly.

**TRANSPARENT**—Allowing light to be presented almost perfectly.

TRIPOLI CAKE—A commercially prepared form of an abrasive stone known as tripoli.

TWIST DRILL—A cutting tool used for boring in a hard substance as metal. The tool is driven by machine or hand.

VENTS—A small flue or air passage to release air or gases.

VIBRATE—To move to and fro rather rapidly.

WHITING—A white powdered chalk used for polishing.

WOODEN CORE—A solid block or cylinder of wood used to hold a coil of wire for sawing.

---

# BIBLIOGRAPHY

---

THE HISTORY AND POETRY OF FINGER-RINGS, by Charles Edwards, 234 pp. New York: Redfield, 1855.

*A book for the student of jewelry who wishes to obtain a background of ring history and ring lore.*

FINGER RING LORE, by William Jones, F.S.A., 497 pp. London: Chatto and Windus, Piccadilly, 1877.

*An early book giving something of rings and interesting ring superstitions. It is a book on ring traditions with many literary references, but gives little or no attention to design or jewelry techniques.*

HANDBOOK OF ORNAMENT, by Franz Sales Meyer, 580 pp. New York: Hessling & Spielmeyer, 1894.

*This valuable handbook, or grammar as described by the author, has 300 plates as well as other illustrations giving a complete collection of Bases of Motives and Ornament; examples of Ornament as such, which are classified as paneling, and supports as balustrades; and illustrations of applied ornament including utensils, furniture, jewelry, etc. The illustrations are for the most part of historic examples and the date as well as location of the specimens are given. It is a valuable design reference book although it gives no space to construction.*

GOLDSMITHS' AND SILVERSMITHS' WORK, by Nelson Dawson, 262 pp. London: Methuen and Co. New York: G. P. Putnam's Sons, 1907.

*This volume of the "Connoisseur's Library" emphasizes an appreciation of the beauty of the crafts. The story of mining, tales of peasant jewelry, traditions of historic chalices, pyxes, and beakers are included. While jewelry is not definitely*

*featured, much data of interest and value to the craftsman are presented.*

ENAMELLING, by Lewis F. Day, 222 pp. London: B. T. Balford, 1907.

*In 26 chapters and with 115 illustrations, photographs, line, etc., the history of enameling is presented with the stated purpose of emphasizing the progress made in the craft and of obtaining some estimate of possible future development. An array of historic illustrations and examples demonstrating the progress of the art technically and artistically is presented. The volume presents a great amount of historic and practical interest for one devoted to the subject whether he be craftsman or student.*

JEWELLERY, by H. Clifford-Smith, 370 pp. London: Methuen and Co. First published in 1908.

*A volume in the "Connoisseur's Library." The frontispiece is in colors and several similar illustrations appear throughout the book. The text is interspersed with photographic and line-drawing illustrations which are carefully listed. The author presents a clear discussion of design from the viewpoint of the artist in jewelry, together with methods for producing such design, and gives reasons for employment of certain characteristic details. The book includes also a discussion of the use of semi-precious stones.*

HOW TO ENAMEL: a Treatise on Practical Enameling of Jewelry with Hard Enamels, by Howard M. Chapin, 69 pp. New York: John Wiley & Sons. London: Chapman & Hall, Ltd., 1911.

*The introduction is primarily a series of definitions of terms to be used in the discussion of enameling. The book is a simply stated set of directions for preparing enamels and metals, and for "charging" or laying the enamel. Preferred methods for firing, stoning, or filing the enamel to a smooth surface, are presented and the processes of painting and photographing on enamel are briefly mentioned.*

METALWORK AND ENAMELLING, by Herbert Maryon, 317 pp. London: Chapman and Hall, Ltd., 1912.

*Three hundred and thirty-three line drawings by Cyril Pearce together with many plates contribute to the presentation of the constructional and technical elements of design as well as of the artistic and aesthetic details. Various chapters treat of tools, materials, soldering, stone setting, repoussé, spinning, enameling, and wire work. Enameling together with alloys of various kinds is discussed as are processes and tools. A generous number of tables on gauges, composition of alloys, standards of weights, etc., is supplied.*

*This is, as the author states, a practical treatise on the craft of the gold and silversmith, and an excellent one.*

GEM-STONES, by G. F. Herbert Smith, 300 pp. London: Methuen and Co., Ltd., 1912.

*Forty chapters devoted to gems, and their physical characteristics, identification, cutting, reflection, refraction, and other scientific phases as well as the constructional and design problems of employing gems. It includes tables on Chemical Composition of Gems, Colors of Gem Stones, Refractive Indices of Gem Stones, Color and Dispersion of Gem Stones, Character of the Refraction of Gem Stones, and Specific Gravity.*

SILVERWORK AND JEWELRY, by H. Wilson, illustrated with diagrams by the author. New York: D. Appleton and Company, second edition, 1912.

*This book is for the craftsman and the person who is learning to create in metal. It discusses operations, processes, and tools. Many cuts illustrate designs, tools, and methods. The second edition has new sections written in collaboration with Prof. Unno Biser of the Fine Arts College, Tokio; among these are descriptions of Egyptian and Oriental methods of work.*

UNIT JEWELLERY, by R. L. B. Rathbone, 280 pp. London: Constable & Company, Ltd. New York: E. P. Dutton & Co,

*This handbook contains many excellent specimens of chains and links, compound twists and plaited wire. Tools and mechanical processes such as wire drawing, pickling, and soldering are also discussed. The emphasis is on unit jewelry.*

A HISTORY OF ORNAMENT, ANCIENT AND MEDIEVAL, by A. D. F. Hamlin, 392 pp. New York: The Century Company, 1916.

*A book in usable form for the student learning to adapt historic ornament to jewelry design. Four hundred illustrations are included.*

JEWELRY MAKING AND DESIGN, by Augustus F. Rose and Antonio Cirino, B.S. Providence, R. I.: Metal Crafts Publishing Co., 1917.

*The first section of this book presents twenty chapters on jewelry making, stone cutting, gold, silver, weights and processes involved in jewelry making, and articles of jewelry including methods of ornamentation.*

*The second section is devoted to analysis of jewelry design, rendering, and the application of design to various types of jewelry.*

ANTIQUÉ JEWELRY AND TRINKETS, by Fred W. Burgess, 392 pp. New York: Tudor Publishing Co., 1919.

*One hundred and forty-two photographic illustrations, examples of the jewelry art, are included. Of the forty-three chapters, six are devoted to the origin of materials and the history of guilds developing the craft. Nine chapters pertain to a history and classification of gems, precious stones, to cutting, pastes, cameos, etc. Six chapters are given to such jewelry as rings, etc., while sixteen contain fascinating descriptions of jeweled fabrics, costumes, fans, charms, and of materials allied to jewelry such as jade, amber, coral, also of ecclesiastic and masonic insignia such as badges and trinkets.*

THE ARTS AND CRAFTS OF ANCIENT EGYPT, by W. W. Flinders Petrie, Professor of Egyptology in London University;

author of "A History of Egypt," etc., 158 pp. Edinburgh and London: T. N. Foulis, Ltd. Reprinted 1923.

*The character of Egyptian art is discussed, its periods and schools. Evidences of these classifications are supplied by examples of statuary, reliefs, painting, drawing, the Nile country architecture (although this last is not treated as an entity). The stone work of the Egyptians is presented as is also their wood craft. A chapter is devoted to metal work and another, the eighth, to jewelry and the materials employed in this craft by the workmen of Egypt. Suggestions include the probable methods employed by this ancient people in executing jewelry designs. One hundred and forty illustrations contribute to an understanding of Egyptian art.*

METALCRAFT AND JEWELRY, by Emil F. Kronquest, 180 pp. Peoria, Ill.: Manual Arts Press, 1926.

*The eleven chapters are devoted to discussions and classifications of processes, tools, and materials and are illustrated with 175 line drawings and photographs.*

HOW TO MAKE JEWELRY, by George S. Overton. Providence, R. I.: Walter B. Frost Co., third edition, 1927.

*The subtitle, Practical Instructions from a Practical Manufacturing Jeweler, expresses the purpose and structure of the fifty-five chapters with which are numerous illustrations. Eight chapters on the making of plated jewelry are written by Alvan H. Whiting.*

ESSENTIALS OF METAL WORKING, by Edward Berg and Bristol E. Wing, 160 pp. Peoria, Ill.: Manual Arts Press, 1927.

*In eleven chapters, grouped in three divisions, the authors present the underlying principles and processes required for the execution of good metal work. Tools, equipment, machines, processes are described and illustrated. An appendix gives tables of gauges and tempering heats, etc.*

COLOR IN ART AND DAILY LIFE, by M. Bernstein, translated by R. Cranger Watkin, M.A., Ph.D., 240 pp. New York: Robert McBride & Company, 1928.

*This book, originally developed in a course of lectures presented before a training class of "Drawing Mistresses" in Berlin, abounds in details concerning the history of color, its use and growth of terminology, its effects and general importance. Presented in chapters according to individual colors, the subject is exceptionally interesting to all who find the subject of color more than a matter of passing style.*

COLOR IN EVERY DAY LIFE. A Manual for Lay Students, Artisans, and Artists, by Louis Weinberg, 343 pp. New York: Dodd, Mead & Company, 1928.

*With his conviction that "the art of color is in its infancy," the author directs the subjects of twenty chapters to various principles of color in many phases; physical laws, intensity balance, charts of experiments in activity, nomenclature. The volume further contains rules governing selection and arrangement of colors as applied to dress, the home, window displays, etc. It is a book valuable and interesting for those concerned in the principles of color's effective and agreeable use.*

APPLIED DESIGN IN THE PRECIOUS METALS, by P. Wylie Davidson, 143 pp. London, New York, Toronto: Longmans, Green & Co., 1929.

*An excellent textbook, of Longmans' Technical Handicraft Series, pleasant to use because of typographical clarity and the pertinency of the one hundred and one illustrations. Emphasis is placed on design and effect obtained by tools on the more precious metals used in metal craft.*

CORONET, by Manual Komroff, 675 pp. New York: Grosset and Dunlap, 1930. Fiction.

*The story of the Coronet and of those who possessed it from the year early in the sixteenth century in which it was made*



*to please the pride of Count of Senlis until it was given to a Chicago bride in 1919. The description of jewelry and metal craftsmen in Renaissance Florence contributes romance and an historical understanding of this craft to the modern student and hobbyist of metal and jewelry.*

MODERN SWEDISH ARTS AND CRAFTS IN PICTURES, by Dr. Nils G. Wallin. New York: Charles Scribner's Sons, 1931.

*Beautiful illustrations of railings, grills, lamps, furniture with metal accessories, tableware, and other examples of crafts.*

EDUCATIONAL METAL CRAFT, by P. Wylie Davidson, 228 pp. London, New York, and Toronto: Longmans, Green & Co., 1932.

*This volume of Longmans' Technical Handicraft Series presents in clear typographical form and well-arranged sequence the uses and techniques of tools in producing good metal craft.*

*In thirty chapters and with more than 375 illustrations, methods of repoussé, fine chasing, silversmithing, jewelry, enameling are clearly and practically treated.*

*Outlines of procedure for these various processes are given, a list of important materials and the companies offering them, and the requisites and equipment of a small studio are included. Twenty-five or thirty pages are given to a Glossarial Index with reference notes, a helpful and unusual inclusion.*

MEMOIRS OF BENVENUTO CELLINI, translated by Robert Hobart Cust; illustrated by James Dougherty, 547 pp. Duffield & Green, 1932.

*Translation of Cellini's autobiography, giving a detailed description of his life and mentioning many of his contemporaries during the sixteenth century in Florence when silversmiths and goldsmiths wrought exquisitely.*

NOTES ON JEWELRY AND METAL WORK, by Erma B. Hewitt, 62 pp. Second edition. Alfred, N. Y.: Alfred Press.

*These notes contain chapters or divisions on processes, tools, etc. Directions for problems such as the making of rings, brooches, etc., are presented in sequence of operations.*

HAND-WROUGHT JEWELRY, by Sorensen-Vaughan, 102 pp. Milwaukee, Wis.: Bruce Publishing Company.

*Twelve chapters present stages of hand-wrought jewelry making from the simplest to more difficult processes; piercing, sawing, oxidizing, soldering, carving being included. The illustrations feature details of chains, links, the methods of carving monograms, and usual tools.*

THE STORY OF THE GEMS, by Herbert P. Whitlock, 200 pp. New York: Lee Furman, Inc., 1936.

*In these sixteen chapters there are authoritatively presented discussion of stones, gems, and semi-precious stones as well as organic products used as gems. The weighing of stones and antique uses of gems are interestingly discussed and the numerous plates, two in color, add to the volume's attractiveness.*

IRON WORK—Examples. New York: E. Weybe, 794 Lexington Avenue.

*An encyclopedia of hand-wrought iron work from the middle ages to the end of the eighteenth century. Historical introduction by Otto Hoever. Printed in Germany. Three hundred and twenty pages of excellent illustrations.*

VOLKERSCHMUCK or PEOPLES' JEWELRY, with particular consideration of the metallic jewelry, in addition to introductions and explanations by Dr. Michael Haberlandt, curator of the royal historical court museum in Vienna. A folio of more than 100 plates of primitive and antique jewelry examples.

STYLES OF ORNAMENT, by R. Phene Speltz. Buchdruckerei F. A. Brockhaus, Leipzig.

*A handbook of decoration and ornament in historic, chronological arrangement. Four hundred full-page illustrations*

*with text and index arranged according to subject and material.*

JEWELRY, GEM CUTTING, AND METALCRAFT, by W. T. Baxter, 212 pp. New York and London: Whittlesey House, McGraw-Hill Book Co., Inc., 1938.

*Primarily for the craftsman at home and for the student, it is arranged in two main divisions; the first containing discussions of various metals, soldering, etching, tools, etc.; the second part deals with jewelry making, soldering, blow torches; it lists the operations required in ring making and includes photos and diagrams of stone setting, necklaces, pendants, earrings, etc. Methods of identifying and classifying stones and material on gem cutting as well as a list of dealers arranged according to their particular line are also given.*

THE CURIOUS LORE OF PRECIOUS STONES, by George Frederick Kunz. New York: Halcyon House. Seventh printing, 1938.

*A delightful book for those who enjoy color and beauty in gems and are intrigued by the poetry and tradition of them. Together with 86 illustrations in line, halftone, and color, the eleven chapters present traditions and superstitions of stones, birth stones, crystal balls, talismans, etc.*

NAVAJO SILVER; A Brief History of Navajo Silversmithing, by Arthur Woodward. Field Notes by Richard Van Valkenburgh. . . . 76 pp. Bulletin No. 14. Museum of Northern Arizona, Flagstaff, Arizona. 1938. Northern Arizona Society of Science and Art.

*Fifty-six pages of this small volume are given to six chapters of varied length. Twenty more pages contain miscellaneous data, from various sources, concerning Navajo smithing; list of Navajo smiths, 1850-1900; Navajo words referring to metal crafts, etc.*

*The six chapters present a history of the silver craft; its prob-*

*able origin and introduction, about 1830, to the tribe; a discussion of the metal workers whose ability influenced the red men; the various ornaments including pendants, buttons, bracelets; the source of turquoise and silver, as well as later day tendencies to sham and imitation.*

*There are fourteen illustrations of Navajo silver, chiefly photographic. It is an interesting book for any reader of American history, arts, crafts or folk-lore, and particularly valuable for students of design.*

5000 YEARS OF GEMS AND JEWELRY, by Frances Rogers and Alice Beard, 309 pp. New York: Frederick A. Stokes Company, 1940.

*Abounding in legends, historic details, literary reference relative to jewelry, this book presents the development of the craft during each successive period of historic art study. It includes a discussion of many jewelers who excelled during the best periods of design and workmanship. The second half of the volume is given to gems, their substance, history, comparative value, methods of cutting, etc. Twenty photographic illustrations, 75 line drawings, several tables, a glossary, bibliography, make this a valuable book for the craftsman, and it is good reading for all who enjoy the charm of gems and a variety of facts in art discussions.*

# INDEX

- ABRASIVES, 134  
 Acid, dipping in, 133  
 Air, regulation, 55; vents, 52, 55  
 Ammonium sulphide, 73  
 Annealing, 17, *Fig. 3*, 18, 19, *Fig. 4*, 20, 21, 41, 80; pan, 21  
 Appendices, 337  
 Asbestos, block, 41; pad, 63
- BACKGROUND, 31  
 Baking, investment, 64, 240  
 Balls, 44, 120, 122, 123, *Ill.*, 179, *Fig. 69*, 188; making, 122  
 Band, 9, 153; of wire, 185, 275, 276  
 Bassetaille, 126, 138  
 Bead, 171, *Ill.*, 179, *Fig. 106*, 318, *Fig. 107*, 322; round, 323; oval, 326.  
 Bearing, 153, 155, 159, 162  
 Bending, 18, 157  
 Bezel, 87, 151, *Fig. 56*, 153, 154, 157; claw or crown, 160; making, 153, 156  
 Bibliography, 363  
 Binding, 38, 46; wire, 48; *Fig. 12*, 48; wire use, *Fig. 13*, 49, 259, 260  
 Blades, 31, 33, 37  
 Blow torch, *Fig. 3*, 18, 66, 345  
 Borax, 24, 40, 57; slate, 41  
 Boric acid, 44  
 Bossing, 77
- Bracelet, 94, 171, *Ill.*, 268, 269; twisting wire, *Fig. 92*, 270; band, *Fig. 93*, 274  
 Brooch, 171, *Ill.*, 244, *Fig. 86*, 246, *Fig. 87*, 247, 248, 256  
 Buff, 345; buffing, 71, 72, 73, 74  
 Burnisher, 344; burnishing, 139  
 Button, 56
- CABOCHON, 153; square, 156; round, 163  
 Carrier, 63, 64, *Fig. 19*, 64  
 Carving, 17; tool, 57; *Fig. 21*, 86, 87; tool, 88; metal for, 90; position tools, 91; material, 91; finishing, 92; gauge, 93, 164; ornament, 232  
 Casting, 17; machine, 50, 51; metal, 52; preparation for metal, 53, 56, 58, 59, 64, 66, 229; pattern, 231, 241  
 Catch, *Fig. 100*, 300, 302, 307, *Fig. 105*, 311, 316  
 Centrifugal, force casting machine, *Fig. 14*, 50, 51, 58  
 Chains, 106, 171, *Ill.*, 279, *Fig. 94*, 282, 283; construction, 284; flat coiled units, *Fig. 96*, 292; round coiled and oval, *Fig. 97*, 296  
 Chalk, 29  
 Chamois, 71  
 Champlevé, 126, 134

- Charcoal, 19; block, 19, 21, *Fig.* 10, 41, 48, 123,  
 Charging, 131  
 Chaser's bowl, or block, 83  
 Chasing, 17, *Fig.* 20, 76, 77; preparation for, 78, 80  
 Chevron twist, 103  
 Circle, 167  
 Clasp, 171; ring socket, *Fig.* 100, 300; *Fig.* 101, 304, *Fig.* 102, 308, *Fig.* 103, 309, *Fig.* 104, 310, 312  
 Claw setting, 151, 160, *Fig.* 59, 160  
 Cleaning, 17, 42, 70; materials, 338  
 Clip, 171, *Ill.* 244, *Ill.* 245, *Fig.* 90, 262; flat, *Fig.* 91, 263  
 Cloison, 126, 136  
 Cloisonné, 126, 136  
 Coiled, cone, 111, 259; rings, 108, *Fig.* 35, 108, *Fig.* 36, 109, *Fig.* 37, 38, 111, 180; wire, 20, 94, 106, 110, *Fig.* 39, 112, *Figs.* 44, 45, 116, 117; necklace, *Ill.* 287, *Fig.* 99, 298  
 Coiling, 106, *Fig.* 33, 107, 109, 110, 112, 114, 115  
 Collar, 153  
 Coloring, 17, 70, 72; preparations for, 72, 73, 74, 156, 162  
 Cooling, 21, 66  
 Copper, 21, 70  
 Corundum, 133  
 Cotter pins, 44, 49  
 Cradle, sheet iron, *Fig.* 50, 131  
 Crown setting, 151  
 Crucible, 55, 63; carrier, 63, 66  
 Cutting, 147  
 Cuttle bone, mold, *Fig.* 15, 51, 54, 345  
 DAPPING, 100, 121  
 Decorative processes, 75, 106, 135, 145  
 Dental investment, *Fig.* 15, 51, 58  
 Design, 3, 93, 135; ring with carved, 228; *Fig.* 85, 234, 235  
 Disc, 121  
 Discoloration, 23  
 Domed ornament, *Fig.* 70, 189, 190, *Fig.* 107, 322  
 Domes, 120, *Fig.* 69, 188, *Fig.* 77, 204; built up, *Fig.* 79, 212  
 Draw bench, *Fig.* 25, 97  
 Draw plate, *Fig.* 22, 94, 96; plate, 344  
 Drawing, *Fig.* 22, 94, 96, 98  
 Drill, 13  
 Drilling, 35  
 EMERY, 57  
 Enamel, 125; grinding, *Fig.* 47, 125; preparation for, 128; crushing, 129; *Fig.* 48, 49, 129; repairing, 134; preparing, 145, 148; flux, 149  
 Enameling, 125  
 FACING, 54  
 File cut, 28  
 Files, 25, 27, 28, 29, 343  
 Filigree, 145  
 Filing, 17, 25, *Figs.* 5 and 6, 26; preparation, 27; holding, 27; 28

- Finishing, 12, 56, 68, 92, 242  
 Firing, 132, 134  
 Flames, 41, 66  
 Flask, 62, 63, 69  
 Flat coils, 114, 116  
 Flattening, 110, 111, 114  
 Flat twist, 104  
 Flooding, 130  
 Flux, 40, 41, 43, 145, 338  
 Foils, 146  
 Foundation, 249, 251; assembling parts, 258, 261  
 Funnel, 52  
 Furnace, 148  
  
 GALLERY, *Fig. 65*, 167  
 Gauges, 20, 21, 31, 37, 46, 93, 120, 138, 151, 346, 347  
 Girdle, 153, *Fig. 57*, 153, 165  
 Glaze, 25  
 Glossary, 355  
 Gold, 21; coloring, 73  
 Graphite, 54  
 Graver, 340  
 Gypsy setting, 151, *Fig. 62*, 163  
  
 HAMMERING, 18, 96; steel, 344  
 Heating, 18, 66  
 Holding, forms for, 166, *Fig. 63*, 64, 166  
  
 INCISED twist, 104  
 Inserting, 103  
 Investing, 62, 239  
 Investment, 51, 63; baking, 65  
 Iron binding wire, 19  
  
 JEWELRY, processes, 15, 17; making, 171, 172  
  
 Jewelry making processes, 17, *Fig. 3*, 18  
 Joining ornament, 260  
 Joint, 42  
  
 KEYING, 146  
 Kiln, 131  
 Knob, 112  
 Knot ring, *Fig. 67*, 180, 181  
 Knotting, *Fig. 66*, 176, 178  
  
 LAYING out, 9, 10  
 Links, interwoven, *Fig. 95*, 288; chain, 289  
 Loop, 102, 117, 170, *Fig. 67*, 180; looped wire, *Fig. 98*, 297  
 Looping, 117  
  
 MANDREL, 59, *Fig. 34*, 107, 108, 115, 118  
 Materials, 3, 6  
 Measuring, 60, 103  
 Melting, 55  
 Metal, for enamel, 128; applying enamel, 130; firing, 131  
 Modeling, 77, 82; clay or wax, *Fig. 51*, 143  
 Mohs's scale, 333  
 Mold, 51; cuttle bone, *Fig. 15*, 51, 54; box for, *Fig. 52*, 144; plaster, *Fig. 53*, 144, 230  
 Mounting, 13; design, 13; plate, 13  
  
 NECKLACE, coiled wire, 170, *Ill.*, 281, *Ill.*, 303  
 Nitric acid, 74; pickle, 74  
  
 OIL, from file, 29; stone, 342; grinding stone, 343

- Oiling, 79, 81, 82  
 Opaque stones, 332, 334  
 Open twist, 104  
 Ornament, solid, 11, 94, 120, 125, 184, 187, 250, 314  
 Oval rings, 109  
 Oxidation, 25, 73, 144  
 Oxides, removing, 74  
 Oxides, 66, 74, 129  
  
 PATTERN, 31, 53; tin, 54; wax, 59, 60; casting, 66, 237  
 Paved setting, 151  
 Pickle, preparation, 22, 74, 78, 346  
 Pickling, 17, 22; preparation, 23, 148  
 Piercing, 31, 32; preparation for, 35, 36, 145  
 Pin stem, 253, 261  
 Pitch, bowl, *Fig.* 20, 76, 80, 83; block, 83  
 Polishing, 17, 70, 71; motor, 345  
 Potassium sulphide, 72, 345  
 Pumice, 71  
 Punching, 35  
  
 QUESTIONS and answers, 21, 23, 28, 37, 46, 57, 68, 74, 82, 83, 93, 118, 123, 148, 168  
  
 REAMING, 65  
 Reducing flame, 57  
 Relief, 77, 87  
 Repoussé, 17, 77; preparation for, 78, 81, 138  
 Ring, *Ill.* 174; mold, *Fig.* 15, 51, 94, 111, 112; wire, *Fig.* 40, 113, 114; finger, 171, 175; shank, 177; *Ill.* 179, 184, 186, *Fig.* 69, 89; with round stone, *Fig.* 72, 196; shank, 199; blank, *Figs.* 74, 75, 76, 200, 204  
 Riveting, 253  
 Rolling, 18  
 Rouge paste, 45  
  
 SAMPLER, 3, 4, *Fig.* 8, 31; directions for, 9  
 Sawing, 17, *Fig.* 7, 30, *Fig.* 8, 31; preparation for, 32, 33, 34, 35  
 Saws, 31  
 Scale, 24  
 Scotch stone, 42, 71, 134  
 Settings, 163, 165, 232, 243  
 Shading, 147  
 Shank, 177, 196, 197, 199, 200, 207, 212, *Fig.* 80, 213; cast, *Fig.* 83, 226; with stones, *Fig.* 84, 227  
 Sharpening blade, 88, 89  
 Shellac, 87; stick, 27, 87, 89, 93  
 Silver, 21, 22; coloring, 74  
 Socket, *Fig.* 100, 300, 301, 306; square, 313; oblong, 316  
 Solder, 10, 38, 39, 40, *Fig.* 9, 40, 41, 42, 45, 47, 338  
 Soldering, 17, 38; preparation for, 43; special, 44; problems, 44; nest, *Fig.* 11, 46; wire, *Fig.* 13, 49; wire units, *Fig.* 71, 194  
 Soldering nest, 345  
 Spring, 66; catch, 304, 305  
 Sprue, 61; former, 61, *Fig.* 18, 61, 68; pin, *Fig.* 18, 61  
 Stamped forms, 120, 123  
 Stamping, 123, 124  
 Sterling silver, 74, 123



Stones, 153; round, 198; oblong,  
218; *Fig. 82*, 219, 331, 332  
Stone setting, *Fig. 55*, 150, 151  
Stoning, 132  
Stretching, 98  
Swivel, catch, *Fig. 100*, 300

# TOOLS, 340

Torch, *Fig. 3*, 18, 41

Tracing, 32, 33

Tragacanth, 44, 137

Transferring, 33; other methods,  
36, 90

Translucent stones, 332, 334

Transparent stones, 332, 335

Tube, drawing, 98; *Fig. 26*, 99;  
preparation for, 100; drawing,  
101

Twist, *Fig. 27*, 102, *Fig. 28*, 104,  
*Fig. 29*, 104, 105

Twisting, wire, 101; *Figs. 23* and  
24, 95, 103, 118

# UNDERCUTTING, 57

VENTS, 55

Vine twist, 103

Wax, casting, 52; dental, 59, 60;  
purchase, 68, 143; bead, 68;  
waxing, 33; methods, 10

Weighing, 55

Wire, 94; beads, 318, 319; band,  
9; bending, 14; coiling, 106,

WAVED wire, 105

108; drawing, *Fig. 22*, 94, 96;  
preparation for draw, 96, *Fig.*  
29, 104; twisting, 101; work,  
10, 94

Wire rings, 112, *Fig. 40*, 113;  
oval, 113, 114, 177, *Ill*, 179,  
*Fig. 67*, 180

Wire units, brooch, *Fig. 88*, 254,  
*Fig. 89*, 255

Workshop, 349; plan, *Fig. 110*,  
350, 352, 353



Acc. No.	18120
Class No.	C.29.
Book No.	8

